

# PART ONE

## Units

### Units

10, 11, 12,  Revision 

13, 14, 15,  Revision 

16, 17, 18,  Revision 

Prepared and designed by  
**Mr. Mahrous Ahmed Haikal**  
Senior Teacher of English  
Sahel Seleem – Assiut  
01229603498  
[mahrousaahmed@facebook.com](mailto:mahrousaahmed@facebook.com)  
[mahrousaahmed77@yahoo.com](mailto:mahrousaahmed77@yahoo.com)



## Communications today

communication	تواصل / اتصال	colleague	زميل عمل
communicate	يتواصل / يتصل	bully	بلطجي / مستأسد
blog	مدونة	bullying	بلطجة / استئساد
social networking site	موقع تواصل اجتماعي	evidence	دليل
website	موقع على الانترنت	generation	جيل _ توليد
share	يشارك / مشاركة	traditional	تقليدي
interests	اهتمامات	headlines	عناوين رئيسية
interested	مهتم	prediction	تنبؤ
interesting	شيق	thoughts	افكار
advertisement	اعلان	connect	يوصل
advertise	يعلن	connection	اتصال (بالنت)
apply	يتقدم لوظيفة- يطبق	development	تطور / تنمية
application	تطبيق	develop	يطور
applicant	متقدم لوظيفة	developed	متطور
applicable	قابل للتطبيق	developing	نامي
complicated	معقد	device	جهاز
complication	تعقيد	digital	رقمي
comments	تعليقات	digits	ارقام
comment	يعلق	fax	فاكس
commentary	تعليق مكتوب	high-quality	جودة عالية
advantages = merits = pros	مميزات	smart	ذكي / انيق
disadvantages = demerits = cons	عيوب	visual	بصري
online	متصل بالانترنت	vision	رؤية
offline	غير متصل بالانترنت	audio	سمعي
diary	مفكرة / نوتة	further	اكثر
experts	خبراء	helmet	خوذة
immediately	في الحال	form	شكل - يشكل
business	شركة	replace	يستبدل
sound	يبدو / صوت / سليم	rather than	مفضلا عن
anyway	على اى حال	other than	بخلاف / سوى / غير
granddad	جدو	abroad	في الخارج
instead	عوضا عن ذلك	aboard	على متن الطائرة
instead of.....	بدلا من	update	يحدث بيانات
popular	محبوب / معروف	particular	خاص / معين
stand still	يثبت / يظل ثابت	particularly	خصوصا
activities	انشطة	electrical	كهربائي
persuade	يقنع	electric	كهربى
details	تفاصيل	signals	اشارات
whenever	حينما / فى اى وقت	purpose	غرض
whatever	مهما	emergency	طوارئ
		emergent	طارىء



## Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - blog** مدونة  
- A personal website diary for other people to read.
- 2 - social networking site** (وسائل التواصل الاجتماعية social media) موقع تواصل اجتماعي  
- A website where people can write information about themselves and share it with other people.
- 3 - interests** اهتمامات (interested – interesting – interestingly)  
- activities that you enjoy doing or subjects that you enjoy studying.
- 4 - advertise** يعلن (advertisement اعلان - advertiser المعلن)  
- to tell people about a product or service in order to persuade them to buy it or use it.
- 5 - apply** يتقدم بطلب (applicant طالب الوظيفة - application طلب وظيفة / طلب)  
- To officially ask to be considered for a job, place at a college etc., especially by writing a letter.
- 6 - complicated** معقد (complication)  
- difficult to understand or deal with because it contains many different parts or details.
- 7 - comments** تعليقات (comment on - commentator)  
- an opinion that you give about someone or something.
- 8 - connect** يوصل (connection)  
- to join two places or things together.
- 9 - development** تطور / تنمية (develop يطور - developing – developed متطور)  
- the process of becoming bigger, better, more important etc., or the result of this process.
- 10 - device** جهاز  
- a machine or tool used for a particular purpose.
- 11 - digital** رقمي (digits ارقام)  
- using a system in which information is shown in the form of changing electrical signals.
- 12 - fax** فاكس  
- a document that is sent down a telephone line and then printed using a special machine.
- 13 - high-quality** جودة عالية  
- a good standard.
- 14 - smart** ذكي / انيق (smart card, phone, car, device, uniform)  
- smart machines use computers or the latest methods to work.
- 15 - technology** تقنية / تكنولوجيا (technological تقني)  
- a combination of all the knowledge, equipment, methods etc. that are used in scientific or industrial work.
- 16 - visual** بصري (vision رؤية - visibility وضوح)  
- relating to seeing or your ability to see.

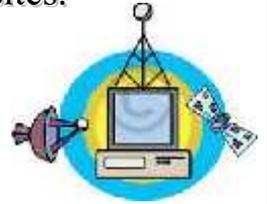


## Expressions تعبيرات

social networking site	موقع تواصل اجتماعي	conduct a survey	يدير استبيان
the same.....as	مثل	written communication	تواصل كتابي
advertise jobs	يعلن عن وظائف	visual communication	تواصل مرئي
social media	وسائل التواصل الاجتماعي	smart phones	هواتف ذكية
make comments	يعلق	complex ways	طرق معقدة
make plans	يخطط	traditional phones	هواتف تقليدية
make a prediction	يتنبأ	a washing machine	غسالة
make friends	يكون اصدقاء	electronic mail	بريد الكتروني
do research	يقوم بعمل بحث	share interests	يشارك اهتمامات
do activities	يقوم بعمل أنشطة	come true	يتحقق
do\write blogs	يكتب مدونات	sports club	نادي رياضي

### Examples:

- Facebook, Twitter and Instagram are all social networking sites.
- Students should do a lot of activities at school.
- My father has bought me a smart car. It has all the options.
- I hope all my dreams will come true.
- Asmaa always writes \ does blogs online.
- All my friends share the same interests.
- My teacher asked me to conduct a survey on social networking sites.



## Prepositions حروف جر

on the internet	على الانترنت	live on the moon	يعيش على القمر
on a website	على موقع نت	plan for	خطة لـ
on television	في التلفاز	plan to	يخطط لـ
on mobile phone	على الهاتف	find out about	يعرف عن
on a business trip	في رحلة عمل	keep in touch with	يبقى على اتصال مع
based on	مبنى / مؤسس على	pay for	يدفع مقابل
connect to	يوصل بـ	pay to	يدفع لـ
communicate with	يتواصل مع	pay with	يدفع بواسطة
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة	last for	يستمر / يدوم لـ
spend.....on	ينفق.....على.....	a form of...	شكل من.....
by the power of....	بقوة .....	by the year....	بحلول عام

### Examples:

- You can find a lot of information on the internet.
- I saw a wonderful movie on television yesterday.
- Mr. Mahrous is not available on his mobile phone.
- This film is based on a real story.
- To apply for this job, you should fill in this form.
- Don't spend a lot of money on buying trivial things.
- A lot of people like to communicate with their friends on social networking sites.
- Keep on touch with me on the internet or on my mobile phone.
- I wish that our friendship will last forever.



## Language Notes

- ▶ **communication** تواصل / اتصال  
 ▶ **communications** (plural) وسائل اتصال (جمع دائما)  
 ▶ **communicate** يتواصل  
 ▶ **communicative** متواصل



Ex: You should have a good communication with your friends.

Ex: The power failure disturbed communications.

Ex: They communicated with each other using sign language.

Ex: Customers complained that sales clerks were not very communicative.

- ▶ **abroad** في الخارج / خارج البلاد  
 ▶ **aboard** على ظهر / متن السفينة / الطائرة

Ex: My uncle has lived abroad for ten years.

Ex: Passengers are not allowed to take video cameras aboard.

- ▶ **have interests** لدية اهتمامات  
 ▶ **be interested in** مهتم بـ

Ex: Good friends should have mutual interests.

Ex: Mai is interested in taking photographs.

- ▶ **rather than** مفضلا على  
 ▶ **other than** غير / سوى / الا

Ex: I prefer staying at home rather than go out.

Ex: All the students attended the party other than Sahar.

- ▶ **electrical** كهربى / كهربائى ( لوصف الاعطال والاشخاص )  
 ▶ **electric** كهربى / كهربائى ( لوصف الادوات والاجهزة )

Ex: My brother is an electrical engineer.

Ex: We bought an electric oven.

- ▶ **instead** بدلا من ذلك / عوضا عن ذلك ( تاتي في نهاية الجملة بلا مفعول بعدها )  
 ▶ **instead of....** بدلا من..... ( يجب ان تتبع بمفعول )

Ex: I don't have coffee, do you want a cup of tea instead?

Ex: You should buy me a pen instead of the one you broke.

- ▶ **be based on** مبنى على / مؤسس على  
 ▶ **be based in** مقرة فى ..

Ex: This film is based on a real story.

Ex: He was born in Cairo but he is based in Mansoura.

- ▶ **apply for + something** يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة  
 ▶ **apply to + something\someone** يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة او شخص  
 ▶ **apply at + www. ....** يتقدم بطلب عبر موقع

Ex: My brother has applied for a job.

Ex: He has applied to join the army.

Ex: Applicants can apply at [www.jobfinder.com](http://www.jobfinder.com).





## Listening

### ⚡ CONVERSATION BETWEEN HATEM, HIS MOTHER AND HIS GRANDFATHER.

**Grandfather:** What are you doing, Hatem?

**Hatem** : I'm just going to send a message to one of my friends, Munier.

**Grandfather:** How are you doing that?

**Hatem** : On one of the social networking sites where you can send messages to your friends and make new friends. Munier lives in Luxor.

**Grandfather:** Luxor? How long does the message take?

**Hatem** : He'll get the message immediately. You can also do it on your mobile phone if you've got a modern one.

**Mother** : How do you make new friends on a computer?

**Hatem** : It's quite easy, really, Mum. You find people who have the same interests as you and you ask them to be your friend. Most people have about 130 friends. I have about 80. I think I'll have more friends after I start going to the sports club next week.

**Grandfather:** 80? That's amazing.

**Hatem** : I even have three friends in England, so I can practice my English when I write to them.

**Mother** : And do you meet all these friends?

**Hatem** : Not always, usually I just send them messages. But I'm going to meet one of my English friends. He's going to visit Cairo next year.

**Mother** : Are social networking sites just for young people and their friends?

**Hatem** : No, millions of businesses are using them to advertise jobs. My friend's older brother has seen a job online and he is going to apply for it using social media.

**Mother** : It sounds very complicated.

**Hatem** : It isn't complicated, but you can waste a lot of time. Some of my friends are on it for two or three hours a day, sometimes writing their blog.

**Grandfather:** What's a blog?

**Hatem** : It's a web page where you can write about your life and your interests, or information about a particular subject. You can update it whenever you want to, and the newest information is always at the top of the page. Other people can read what you've written and make comments.

**Grandfather:** Do you write a blog?

**Hatem** : Yes, every day, because I want to share my interests with other people. It's like being a journalist.

**Grandfather:** Will anyone read your blog?

**Hatem** : Yes, about 200 people will read it. Anyway, why did you ask me if I was busy, Granddad?

**Grandfather:** Could you post this letter for me? It's to my friend who lives in Saudi Arabia.

**Hatem** : Yes, of course. I'll post your letter now. I haven't posted a letter to a friend for a long time.

**Grandfather:** Really? Do you think we won't have letters in the future?

**Hatem** : Yes, I think everyone will use social networking sites instead. It's easier and quicker.

**Mother** : The only thing that we can be sure of is that technology is not going to stand still! You'd better show me how to use the site, Hatem!

**Hatem** : Ok, Mum!



**READING****READING****Stay Connected**

**Twenty – five years ago**, communications between people were very different from today. To call friends quickly, we needed to find a telephone to ring them. If time was not important, we wrote a letter and sent it by post. For fast written communication, businesses sent faxes.

**Although** many people still use these ways of communicating, they are becoming less popular because of new technology. Today, the most common forms of personal and business communications are mobile phone calls, text messages and e-mails. But even mobile phones are changing all the time. Many people now use smart phones. These are phones with computers which can connect to the internet and send e-mails.

**In the future**, the only thing that we can be sure of is that technology is not going to stand still. Scientists are going to continue inventing new more complex ways of communicating. Some experts are predicting that the next big development will be in visual communications. Small mobile computers with fast internet connections will probably be the first mobile devices that give us high- quality visual communication, so that we can see the people we are talking to.

**Further in the future**, who knows what will happen? By the year 2023, scientists are predicting that we will be able to send text messages by the power of thought. A special helmet connected to our brain will turn what we are thinking into a digital form which we will then be able to communicate to other people that we know.

**QUESTIONS & ANSWERS****1- How were communications in the past different from today?**

- In the past people used to write letters, make phone calls and send faxes. Today people use mobile phones to make calls and send messages and e-mails.

**2- What did people use in the past for communication?**

- People used to write letters, make phone calls and send faxes.

**3- What do people use for communication today?**

- They use mobile phones, smart phones and social media.

**4- What are smart phones?**

- They are phones with computers which can connect to the internet and send e-mails.

**5- Why is technology not going to stand still?**

- Because scientists are going to continue inventing new, more complex ways of communicating.

**6- What is meant by visual communication?**

- It means that we can see the people we are talking to.

**7- How will we be able to send messages by the power of thought?**

- By wearing a special helmet which will be connected to our brain. This helmet will turn what we are thinking into a digital form which we will then be able to communicate to other people that we know.

**8- In what situations are mobile phones most useful?**

- They are very important in emergent situations, accidents, travelling and holidays.



**9- What are the main disadvantages of mobile phones?**

Mobile phones may be expensive and can make people very lazy. They also can damage our hearing.

**10- In which situations should people not use a mobile phone?**

- People should not use a mobile phones on driving a car, while praying, in hospitals and on planes.

**11- Why do some people prefer to send text messages rather than to make a phone calls?**

- Text messages are cheaper than calls. In addition, they are quick and easy to reply to.

**12- How would life be different if we had no computers or mobile phones?**

- Life would be less comfortable and less enjoyable but people would visit each other more instead of making phone calls or sent them letters.

**13- To what extent can means of communication make our lives easier?**

- Means of communication make our life easier and more comfortable. Now we can be in touch with other people in few seconds through the internet or social medias.

**✦ Making plans: عمل خطط \ للتعبير عما تخطط فعله**

ان تعبر عما تخطط فعله فى المستقبل يمكن ان تستخدم الاتى:

- My plan is to.....
- I'm planning to.....
- I plan to.....
- I'm going to.....

**✦ Making promises: عمل الوعود \ اعطاء وعود**

عن وعود مستقبلية يمكن ان تستخدم الاتى:

- I promise to.....
- I promise that I'll.....
- I promise I will \ I won't.

**2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations: (workbook page 64)**

1- A friend asks you what you are planning to do at the weekend.

.....

2- You want to know if your friend is doing anything this summer.

.....

3- Your grandmother says she would like you to phone her every day when she is away.

.....

4- Your mother asks you to tidy the house. Tell her you will tidy your bedroom first.

.....

5- You borrow a CD from a friend. He\She says you must not forget to bring it back tomorrow.

.....



# ★ Grammar ★

## ★ THE FUTURE : will \ going to

### 1. The future with will:

[ Subject + will \ won't + inf. ]

نستخدم المستقبل البسيط للتعبير عن :

1. للتعبير عن حقيقة المستقبل . Facts in the future .

⇒ I will be fifteen next year.

2. للتنبؤ بأحداث مستقبلية . Prediction in the future .

⇒ I think Al-Zamalek will win the match.

3. عندما نعبّر عن قرار آتخذ بسرعة بدون ترتيب مسبق . Quick decision .

⇒ Someone is knocking, I'll open the door.

4. لعرض عمل شيء ما أو تقديم خدمة : offer

⇒ I'll wash the dishes for you, Mum.

5. لطلب شيء أو خدمة من شخص :

⇒ Will you help me, please?

6. لعمل ترتيبات : making arrangements

⇒ I'll wait for you at 7 o'clock at the bus stop.

7. للتهديد : threat

⇒ I'll dial the police if you don't leave now.

8- للوعد promise

⇒ I will buy you a present if you come first.

- يستخدم المستقبل البسيط غالبا بعد افعال وتعبيرات مثل :

**I expect .../I predict....\I'm sure .../I think / I don't think / I wonder / probably /possibly / I suppose /I hope / I believe / I feel sure / Perhaps..**

Ex: I expect that Al Zamalek will win the next match.

Ex: I hope that Mai will pass the exam.

Ex: We will probably buy a new car.

Ex: It's probably that Asmaa will attend the meeting.

Ex: I wonder what will happen.

- افعال المستقبل الآتية ياتي ورائها to + Inf. اما اذا جاء بعدها فاعل فانه ياتي بعدها will + Inf.

Ex: I expect to meet her tomorrow.

Ex: I expect that I will meet her tomorrow.



**2. "Going to" to express plans and intentions:****[ Subject + am, is, are + going to +inf. ]**

نستخدم "be Going to" بمعنى يخطط/ ينوي / على وشك للتعبير عن :  
1. نية أو قصد أو شيء خطط له من قبل . intention or plan .

**Ex:** I'm going to travel to Luxor next week. I plan to travel to Luxor

**Ex:** She is going to have a party next month. She intends to have a party

2. حدث في المستقبل وشيك الحدوث أو هناك دلائل على حدوثه ( تنبؤ قائم على دليل ) :

**Ex:** The sky is full of dark clouds. It's going to rain.

**Ex:** The petrol tank is leaking. The car is going to stop.

3. تستخدم تلك الصيغة مع افعال التحذير والاحتراس مثل :

**Look, Listen, Watch out!**

**Ex:** Watch out! A car is going to hit you.

ملاحظات هامة جدا :

1 ( اذا كان القرار اتخذ الان (قرار سريع) فاننا نستخدم will + Inf. اما اذا كان القرار اتخذ من قبل فاننا نستخدم صيغة be going to

**Ex:** I've decided now that I will go to bed.

2 ( اذا كان التنبؤ مجرد رأى شخصى فاننا نستخدم will + Inf. اما اذا كان التنبؤ مبنى على دليل فاننا نستخدم صيغة be going to

**Ex:** I think Sahar will pass the exam.

**Ex:** Sahar studies hard and revises well. I think she is going to pass the exam.

(3) الصفات الشخصية ليست ادلة:

**Ex:** Asmaa is clever. I think she will get high marks.

(4) يفضل استخدام صيغة be going to بدلا من be going to go

**Ex:** I have booked a ticket. I am going to the cinema.

(5) لا ياتى مستقبل بعد الروابط الزمنية ولكن نستخدم بدلا منه مضارع بسيط او مضارع تام.

S. + future.....connector.....present simple \ present perfect

**Ex:** I will give you the book after I finish it.

**Practice**

1- I plan to spend my summer holiday in Matrouh.

(going)

2- I expect to see Sahar tomorrow.

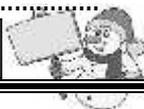
(will)

3- My sister is ten years old.

(next year)

4- I've decided now to go to Assiut.

(will)



# Homework



## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

Asmaa: Hi Sahar. (1).....?

Sahar : Yes, I use social media websites.

Asmaa: Do you have a Facebook account?

Sahar : Yes,(2).....?

Asmaa: Me.I don't like using them.

Sahar : (3).....?

Asmaa: Because they make me lazy and separate me of the real world.

Sahar : So, how do you communicate with your friends?

Asmaa: (4).....

## 2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations: (workbook page 64 )

- 1- A friend asks you what you are planning to do at the weekend.
- 2- You want to know if your friend is doing anything this summer.
- 3- Your grandmother says she would like you to phone her every day when she is away.
- 4- Your mother asks you to tidy the house. Tell her you will tidy your bedroom first.

## 3) Choose the correct answer :

- 1- Hamdi has left university and now he is going to (**apply - advertise - judge -graduate**) for an job at a bank.
- 2- The shop assistant showed me how to (**make - put - connect - contact**) this device to a computer.
- 3- Amira ( **will - is going to - is going - to** ) buy a jacket for her new job at the hotel.
- 4- Do you think that Cairo ( **is - is going to be - will be - going to be** ) bigger in the future?
- 5- The bank is ( **advertising - applying - asking - recharging** ) for a job in Cairo in the newspaper.
- 6- Most cameras that you can buy now are ( **virtual - fictional - bright - digital** ) .
- 7- The story was very ( **complete - real - bright - complicated**) but I could understand it in the end.
- 8- I'm going to make a (**prejudice - prediction - compliment - sentence**) that this year will be hotter than the last year.
- 9- You always leave your mobile phone on the chair. You ( **going to - are going to - is going to - will be**) break it
- 10- Manal (**going to be - are going to - is going to - will be**) 16 in 2018.
- 11- It's really dark. There's ( **will - going to - being - going to be** ) the earth .
- 12- ( **Digital - Visual - Smart - Complicated** ) means using a system in which information is shown in the form of changing electrical signals.
- 13- Waving is a form of ( **audio - visual - legible - written**) communication.
- 14- The computer is a ( **device - devise - advice - advise** ) which has changed our lives. .
- 15- These are ( **high-quality - high-tech - high wave - high-quantity**). They've lasted for so long.
- 16- When Magda finishes university in two years time, she ( **will be - is - is going to be- be** ) 21.
- 17- I have a train ticket. I (**will travel - am travelling - am going to travel - travels** ) this afternoon.
- 18- I promise I ( **write - going to write - will rite -am writing**) to you every day when I am away.
- 19- If you go to England in December, take your coat because it ( **is - be - is going to be- will be** ) cold.
- 20- I and my friends have the same (**interests - insists - persists - interesting**)



- 21- A ( **block - bug - blog - pig** ) is a personal website diary for other people to read.
- 22- Facebook and Twitter are kinds of social ( **netmarketing - networking - fishnet - network** ) sites.
- 23- My problem was ( **complete - completed - complicated - compliment** ) .No one could solve it.
- 24- To sell your goods you need to ( **advertise - revise - devise - memorize** ) them on TV
- 25- My friend always write ( **commands - comments - commons - comas** ) on my posts on facebook.
- 26- My father always read newspapers ( **offline - outline - online - underline** ).
- 27- Technology is not going to ( **sit - keep - stand - steal** ) still .
- 28- Always wear a ( **helmet - hamlet - omelet - outlet** ) on riding a motorbike. It will protect your head.
- 29- We have bought a ( **spar - summer - sweet - smart** ) car recently.
- 30- My ( **predict - predicted - prediction - predictive** ) is that you will be successful.
- 31- I always ( **make - play - do - have** ) blogs on the internet.
- 32- Last week I bought a new ( **digitally- digital - digit - digits** ) camera .
- 33- A laptop is a small ( **advice - devise - revise - device** ) like a computer.
- 34- Waving is a ( **from - farm -frame - firm** ) of visual communication.
- 35- In the future, we'll be able to send messages by the ( **strength - power - energy - tower** ) of thinking
- 36- I always ( **do - recite -make -rewrite** ) comments on my friends posts on facebook.
- 37- ( **Keep - Peep - Deep - Leek** ) in touch with me if you need any help.
- 38- The boat is leaking. It ( **will sink - is going to sink - is sinking - sinks** ) .
- 39- I wish our friendship could last ( **of - to - for - at** ) all our life.
- 40- This film is based ( **in - at - on - off** ) a real story.
- 41- In the word e-mail, 'e' is an abbreviation for ( **electric - electrical - electronic- elected** ).
- 42- Mobile phones are very important in time of ( **emergency - frequency- energy - synergy** )
- 43- I always write my important notes in a ( **dairy - diary- daily - dearly** ) .
- 44- ( **Whatever - Whoever- Whenever - Whichever** ) I remember her, I feel happy.
- 45- I wish all my hopes and ambitions will come ( **truth - true - bro - tooth** ).

#### 4) Rewrite

- 1- I'm going to visit my uncle in hospital. ( **decided** )
- 2- I will attend the conference as planned. ( **going** )
- 3- I have planned to spend my summer holiday in Alexandria. ( **I am....** )
4. Do you intend to visit him soon? ( **Are.....?** )
5. I've decided now to meet him. ( **will** )

#### 5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences :

- I applied for a work as a tour guide.
- Mobiles are the most common forms of personnel and business communications.
- Usual means relating to seeing.
- I plane to spend my holiday in Paris.
- Good friends always share the same interested.



6. Many companies pay a lot of money to advertise on television.
7. A blog is a personal website diary for other people to read.
8. Facebook and twitter are two famous economical networking sites.
9. The computer is a device which has changed our lives.
10. Waving is a form of audio communication.
11. My prediction is that it will be very hot tomorrow.
12. There have been some important developments in medicine over the last few years.
13. Is that a new digital radio?
14. These are high-quality shoes. They lasted for so long.
15. Ahmed can't do this maths homework because it is very complicated.
16. My father bought me a smart phone as a birthday present.
17. My uncle is going to apply for a job at the hospital.
18. The computer is a system that allows people using computers around the world to exchange information.
19. What are your interests in?
20. To be connected to the internet means to be online.
21. A blog is a personal website diary for other people to read.
22. My friends always write comments on my posts on facebook.
23. Technology is not going to sit still.
24. Motorbike drivers must wear helmets to protect their heads.
25. In the future, we will be able to send messages by the power of thinking.

**6) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:**

In today's modern society, the internet is a very educational and productive tool in order to become knowledgeable and stay well connected. Without technology, some individuals cannot function throughout their day. Many people use it for business purposes while others use technology in order to communicate on social networking sites such as Twitter or Facebook. Despite the beneficial uses, predators often abuse its powers. This tool puts consumers at risk for identity theft through scamming, phishing and even hacking. Cyber-crime is any illegal activity committed on the internet that uses a computer as its primary means of theft. Through identity theft, a **predator** without someone's knowledge acquires a piece of their personal information such as their social security number, or even their bank account data and uses it to commit fraud. It is often difficult to catch cyber criminals because the internet makes it easier for people to do things from any location on the globe. Predators use methods such as spam advertisements and even phony programs that have viruses.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

- 1) What are Facebook and Twitter?
- 2) What is the writer mainly talking about?
- 3) How can a predator steal someone online?
- 4) Why is it not easy to arrest cyber criminals?



**B) Choose the correct answer :**

4- People use the internet for.....

a) business

b) communication

c) business and communication

d) nothing

5- The underlined word, 'predator' means .....

a) hacker

b) baker

c) teacher

d) undertaker

**9) Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) only of the following:**

a) Social media and youth.

b) Pros and cons of mobile phones.

**Translation****10) a) Translate into Arabic :**

- A hacker is a person who can steal your personal data online.

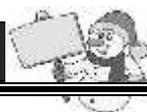
- I think that sending letters for communication will be old-fashioned in the future.

**b) Translate into English :**

- تلعب مواقع التواصل الاجتماعي دورا فعالا بين الشباب..

**THE ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF MOBILE PHONES.****مميزات وعيوب الهواتف المحمولة**

*In the following lines, I'm going to* write about the advantages and disadvantages of mobile phones. Firstly I would like to start with the advantages of mobile phones. Mobile phones are of great importance as they are very useful. They make communication among people much easier and quicker. Also, in emergencies, mobile phones are of great importance. People no longer send letters or send cassettes to reassure their relatives abroad. Now they can talk and see them at once on their mobile phones. On the other hand, mobile phones have few disadvantages. The price of mobile phones is still expensive and some people can't afford them. Besides, mobile phones have health hazards if they are used for too long time.



## Charlotte Bronte

clothe	يلبس - يكسو	ride	يركب خيل
cloth	قماش	rider	راكب / خيال
clothing	الملبس	horse riding	ركوب الخيل
clothes	ملابس	horseback	ظهر الحصان
like	يحب	suppose	يفترض
dislike	يكره	the opposite	على العكس / النقيض
miserable	بأس	jumper	جاكت / بلوفر
miserably	بتعاسة/ ببؤس	gloves	قفازات
naughty	شقى	sunglasses	نظارة شمس
relation	ارتباط - علاقة بين شيئين	discomfort	عدم راحة
relationship	علاقة بين افراد	exactly	بالضبط
relate	يربط	degree	درجة علمية
relative	احد الاقارب	deserve	يستحق
right	حق / صحيح/ يمين	education	تعليم
have the right to	لديه الحق فى	probably	محتمل
silence	صمت	possibly	ممکن
silent	صامت	quickly	بسرعة
silently	بصمت	physically	بدنيا
successful	ناجح	mentally	عقليا
successfully	بنجاح	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
success	نجاح	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
succeed	ينجح	upstairs	فى الادوار العليا
successor	وريث / تابع	downstairs	فى الادوار السفلى
adult	بالغ	alone	لوحده
head teacher	مدرس اول	lonely	وحيد
distance	مسافة	only	فقط
distant	بعيد	free	حر / مجانى / يحرر
contact	يتواصل/ يتصل	for free	مجانى
governess	مربية	disabilities	معوقات
Hoof\hooves	حافر/ حوافر	accidentally	بالصدفة
ice	ثلج	methods	طرق
icy	ثلجى/ متلج	the countryside	الريف
settle	يسوى/ يستقر	extremely	للاغاية
settlement	تسوية/ مستوطنة	extreme	شديد / قاسى
slip	ينزلق	shy	خجول ( بطبعة )
slippers	شيشب	ashamed	شاعر بالخزى
available	متاح / متوافر	hardly	بالكاد / بالعافية
unavailable	غير متاح / غير متوافر	hard	صعب / بصعوبة
remote	بعيد	society	مجتمع
caring	مهتم	social	اجتماعى
roof	سطح المنزل	sociable	شخص اجتماعى

## Definitions تعريفات

**1 - clothe** يلبس ( clothes – clothing الملابس – cloth قماش )

- To provide clothes for someone.

**2 - dislike** يكره / كره

- to not like someone or something.

**3 - miserable** بائس ( miserably بيؤس – misery بؤس – miser بحيل )

- very unhappy.

**4 - naughty** شقى

- a child who behaves badly.



**5 - relation** علاقة / احد الاقارب ( related - relationship علاقة بيت الاشخاص او الدول )

- a connection between two things.

**6 - right** حق ( have the right to لديه الحق في / مباشرة / / / )

- legally or morally allowed to do something.

**7 - silent** صامت ( silence سكون / - silently )

- not saying anything or making any sound

**8 - contact** يتصل

- to telephone or write to someone.

**9 - governess** مربية

- A woman who lives with a family and teaches their children at home.

**10 - hoof \ hooves** حافر الحصان / الحمار

- the foot of an animal such as a horse.



**11 - icy** ثلجى ( ice )

- extremely cold.

**12 - settle in** يستقر

- to start to feel happy after moving to a new house, job or school.

**13 - slip** ينزلق

- to accidentally slide so that you fall or almost fall.

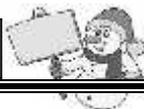


## Expressions تعبيرات

the outside world	العالم الخارجى	feel trapped in....	يشعر بالحبس
have lessons	ياخذ دروس	social life	حياة اجتماعية
face to face	وجها لوجه	point of view	وجهة نظر
own home	منزل خاص	social skills	مهارات اجتماعية
remote areas	مناطق بعيدة	make + Obj. + Adj.	يجعل
children with disabilities	اطفال ذوى اعاقات	a bright day	يوم مشرق

### Examples:

- I always have many lessons at school.
- Everyone hopes to have his own home.
- Prisoners don't have any communication with the outside world.
- In my point of view, Sahar is so pretty.
- I avoided meeting him but at last we met face to face.
- When I stay at home for too long, I usually feel trapped.



## Prepositions حروف جر

kind to get on with contact with set off run past throw...to in pain manage to climb on to on his foot. come from Push.....out of.....	عطوف على ينسجم مع يتصل بـ يبدأ / ينطلق يجرى امام يلقي.....على متلما يستطيع يصعد الى..... على قدمة ياتي من يدفع.....بعيدا عن...	at the back of at the top of settle in lock...in arrive in arrive at get to miss out mix with shout at on the road run towards....	فى مؤخرة على قمة يستقر فى / يتاقلم مع يحبس يصل الى (مكان كبير) يصل الى (مكان صغير) يصل الى يفوته..... يختلط مع يصيح فى..... فى الطريق يجرى تجاه....
---	---	---	--

### Examples:

- My brother is very sociable. He can get on with anyone very quickly.
- If you want to contact me, you can send me a message.
- The horse threw its rider to the ground.
- My sister settled in her school in a short time.
- Don't shout at me like this.
- Mr Fairfax was always kind to Jane.
- Mai managed to answer all the questions.
- I set off my journey in the early morning.
- Jane heard the sound of a horse's hooves on the road.
- Jane's cousin pushed the book out of her hand.
- Don't isolate yourself, you should mix with people.
- Shorouk always climbs on to the roof of the house to look over the countryside.



## Language Notes

► **settle in** ينسجم / يتاقلم مع (سكن او مدرسة او وظيفة)

► **settle down** يستقر (سكنيا او زوجيا اوظيفيا)

Ex: Adam seems to have settled in at his new school.

Ex: My parents want me to sttle down and have children.

► **relation** علاقة / صلة - احد الاقارب

► **relationship** علاقة رسمية او عاطفية

Ex: Ellissa is no relation to Mr. Mahrous.

Ex: My parents had a strong relationship.

► **hard** (adj.) (adv.) صعب / شاق / قاس - بصعوبة / بجد / بغزارة

► **hardly** (adv.) بالكاد / بالعافية

Ex: He studies hard. It is a hard work.

Ex: Raise your voice, I can hardly hear you.

► **lonely** يشعر بالوحده (نشير للوحده)

► **alone** بمفرده / لوهده (نشير لما فعل الفرد بنفسه)

► **only** فقط

Ex: He lived a lonely childhood.

Ex: I did my homework alone.






**Jane** : My name is Jane Eyre and this is the story of my life. In 1818, when I was two years old, my parents died. I went to Gateshead Hall to live with my mother's brother. **Unfortunately**, Mr. Reed died some years later, but I continued to live there with his wife and children, Eliza, John and Georgina. The three children disliked me. They said I was not as good as them because I had come from a poorer family.

One afternoon, when I was nine years old, I was reading quietly in a room at the back of the house. It was winter and I had read in that room every day for weeks. My cousin John had not known I was there so when he saw me, he started to shout at me. "You have no **right** to read our books in this room," he said. "You have no money and we have to feed and **clothe** you. Don't touch our books!"

Then he **pushed** the book out of my hand. I shouted at him and tried to get the book back. At that moment, Mrs Reed came into the room. "You **naughty** girl, Jane," she said and told one of the servants to lock me in a room **upstairs**. So I was put into the room, the door was **locked** and I was left **alone**.

The room was cold, large and **silent**. Although the room had furniture in it, it was **hardly** ever used. My uncle, Mr Reed, had died in this room. What a kind man he had been when I first moved there! But his wife was just **the opposite**. She had disliked me from the day that I arrived at Gateshead Hall and had always made me **miserable**.





As I **settled into** my new life at Thornfield Hall as a **governess**, I became more comfortable. Mrs Fairfax was always really **kind to** me and I **got on** very well **with** my student, Adele. I often climbed on to the **roof** of the house and looked over the countryside because I needed **contact with** the **outside world**.

**Three** very happy months passed. One day, when Adele had a cold and I did not have to teach her, I **offered** to take a letter to the post office for Mrs Fairfax. I set off for the village of Hay, about eight kilometers away. It was a really beautiful day; it was sunnier but colder than it had been recently and the roads were extremely **icy**.

As I was walking along, I heard the sound of a horse's **hooves** on the road. Just then, a enormous black horse. Suddenly, the horse **slipped** and threw the gentleman to the ground. I ran towards the horse and its **rider**. The gentleman was on the ground **in pain**.

I tried to catch the horse but without success, so I told the man I would go to Thornfield Hall for help. When I said that I was the **governess** there, the gentleman looked quite surprised.

**Finally**, I managed to catch the horse and helped the gentleman get back on to it. And without thanking me, he called for his dog Pilot to follow and set off towards Thornfield Hall.



## QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

- 1) **Why do children sometimes have to live with relations who are not their parents?**  
- Because those children must have lost their parents.
- 2) **Do you think it would be easy to live in a house with another family? Why? Why not?**  
- It depends on the family I live with if they are kind to me or not.
- 3) **Would you like to live in a big house a long way from any city? Why? Why not?**  
- Yes, I would. I would prefer silence and quietness away from the crowded cities.
- 4) **Why did the children think that they were better than Jane?**  
- They had a family and their own home, but Jane did not.
- 5) **Why does John say to Jane, "You have no right to read our books"?**  
- He thinks that everything in the house is theirs and does not belong to Jane.
- 6) **Do you think Mrs Reed was right to lock Jane in a room? Why? Why not?**  
- No, because it made Jane very unhappy. She did not deserve to be punished as she had done nothing wrong.
- 7) **How do you think Jane became a successful adult such a sad start to her life?**  
- She worked hard and continued to read books. She probably learned that it was important to have a good education.
- 8) **How did people usually communicate with each other in the nineteenth century?**  
- By talking face to face or by letter.
- 9) **How did they travel short distances?**  
- They walked or went on horseback, possibly by horse and carriage ( a coach).
- 10) **What do you think Jane's life was like as the governess for a young child in a large house in the country in nineteenth- century England?**  
- It was lonely. There was little social life; she had no friends with her or people of her own age.
- 11) **Which subjects do you think Adele was taught?**  
- She was probably taught maths, music, history, geography, science and a language.
- 12) **Why do you think Jane needed contact with the outside world?**  
- Because she spent most of her time in the big house with the family of the child she taught.
- 13) **Why do you think the gentleman left without thanking Jane?**  
- Because he was an important person and Jane was just a governess.
- 14) **In the nineteenth century, do you think there were more or fewer schools than there are today?**  
- There were fewer schools.
- 15) **Why do you think it was the children of rich or important people who had lessons at home?**  
- Because the families had enough money to pay for teachers to come to their homes at a time when people had to pay for education anyway. This may have been necessary if they lived a long way from a school. The nearest school may not have been very good.
- 16) **Why do you think it is less common now?**  
- Because today we all live near to a good school where education is free.



**17) Why must some children have lessons at home today?**

- Ill children or children with disabilities may have to be taught at home because they cannot get to school or are physically or mentally not fit enough.

**18) What do you think these children miss by not going to school? Think of all things children get at school that they could not get at home.**

- They don't meet or mix with other children the same age as themselves. They miss out on interesting lessons using equipment unavailable to home tutors.

**19) In addition to learning from their teachers, who do children learn from at school? What do they learn from these people?**

- They also learn from other children. They learn social skills, games, etc.

**20) In your opinion, what duties should a governess have?**

- A governess

**21) Children should learn new languages at school. Are you for or against this opinion? Why? Why not?**

- I am for this opinion because learning languages has become a must today.

**22) Why do you think it was difficult for Jane to catch the horse?**

- Because the horse might have been strong and fast.

**23) Do you think Jane was happy at Thornfield Hall? Why? Why not?**

- I don't think she was happy because Mrs Reed was no kind to her.

**Agreeing and disagreeing الموافقة والرفض**

☺ <b>Agreeing:</b> الموافقة	☹ <b>Disagreeing:</b> الرفض
- That's true.	- I'd say the opposite.
- I'd go along with that.	- I'm completely against.....
- I couldn't agree more.	- I'm not so sure.
- I agree (with).....	- I don't agree (with).....
- You are right.	- That's not always true.
- I suppose so.	- I don't think so.
- Exactly.	- I disagree (with).....

**Practice****➡ WRITE WHAT YOU WOULD SAY IN EACH OF THE FOLLOWING SITUATIONS:**

- 1- Your friend thinks that we should all learn two foreign languages at school. You agree.
- 2- Your friend thinks that English and Spanish are the most important languages. You disagree.
- 3- Your friend thinks that people with a degree usually get the best jobs. You agree.
- 4- You are against your friend's idea who thinks the internet is a waste of time.



# ★ Grammar ★

## ☛ The Past Simple Tense زمن الماضي البسيط

### ☺ Formation التكوين

Subject + second form of the verb

- I played chess yesterday .
- The pharaohs built the pyramids thousands years ago.

### ☺ Usage الاستخدام

- ⌚ Past actions بعد عمه حدث تم وانتهى في الماضي
- ⌚ describe actions in a story لوصف أحداث في قصة
- ⌚ past habit لوصف عادة كانت تتم في الماضي

وهنا نستطيع أن نستخدم التركيب التالي لنعبر عمه عادة في الماضي أيضاً

### **s + used to + Inf**

- In the past , people used to travel on camels .

**S + used to + Inf. = S + no longer + verb = S. + don't \ doesn't + Inf. + any longer \ any more...**

Ahmed used to smoke. = Ahmed no longer smokes. = He doesn't smoke any longer.

### Questions الأسئلة

**Did + subject + Inf ..... ?**

**Question word + did + subject + Inf ..... ?**

### Negative form

صيغة النفي

**Subject + did + not + subject + Inf ..... ?**

### Key words

**Last....., .....ago, in + date, in ancient times,  
Once, Once upon a time, yesterday,**

### Passive voice

**Object + was / were + p.p.**

### ☒ Notice

**When did.....? = How long ago did.....?**

- ) Structures to describe a past habit تعبيرات تدل على العادة في الماضي
- ) Subject + past verb
- ) Subject + used to + Inf.
- ) It was + name's / تتميم ملكية + habit to + Inf.
- ) Subject + was / were + in the habit of + v-ing



## ☛ The Past Perfect Tense زمن الماضي التام

### - Formation

Subject + had + p.p

### Usage -

(1) ويستخدم الماضي التام ليعبر عن حدث حدث قبل حدث اخر فى الماضى. ( أى انه عندما يكون لدينا حدثين واحدهما حدث قبل الاخر فى الماضى فان الحدث الاول يكون فى زمن الماضى التام والحدث الاخر يكون فى زمن الماضى البسيط )  
Ex: I finished my homework. Then I watched the film.

هنا لدينا حدثين ويجب ان نحدد ايهما حدث اولاً ونجعله ماضى تام ونترك الاخر ( الثانى ) ماضى بسيط.  
Ex: I had finished my homework. Then I watched the film.

وغالبا ما يستخدم زمن الماضى التام مع الروابط الاتية:

**After, as soon as, by the time, before, when, till, until, by + period of time**

**After, as soon as, by the age of + ( Past perfect ) → ( Past simple )**

**Before , by the time, By.....,When + ( past simple ) → ( Past perfect )**

**Subject + didn't + Inf. ← till , until → ( past perfect )**

ولكن مع وجود احد افعال الانتظار فانه:

**S. + had waited \ remained \ stayed.....till \ until + S. + past simple.**

Ex: **After** I had bought my shopping, I **went** home.

Ex: **By the age of** ten, I **had learnt** to ride a bicycle.

Ex: **After** I had arrived my father **left**. ( I saw him.)

Ex: **By the time** I arrived home, my father **had left**. ( I didn't see him.)

Ex: I **didn't go** out **till \ until** I **had finished** my work.

Ex: I **had waited** him **till** he came.

Ex: I **had taken** a shower **before** I went out.

(2) ويستخدم الماضي التام لإعطاء مبررات فى الماضى.

Ex: He **went** to hospital **because** he **had eaten** bad food.

(3) ويستخدم الماضي التام مع الروابط الاتية:

**S + had + no sooner + P.P.....than + S + past simple**

**S + had + hardly \ scarcely \ rarely + P.P.....when + S + past simple.**

Ex: He had no sooner arrived home than he slept.

Ex: He had hardly arrived home when he slept.

ولكنه عند البدء باحد هذه الروابط فانه:

**No sooner + had + S + P.P.....than + S + past simple.**

**Hardly \ Scarcely \ Rarely + had + S + P.P...when + S + past simple.**

Ex: No sooner had he arrived home than he slept.

(4) ويستخدم الماضي التام مع :

**It was only when + S + had + P.P.....that + S + past simple**

**It wasn't until + S + had + P.P .....that + S + past simple**

Ex: It was not until he had built a house that he married.

Ex: It was only when he had built a house that he married.

(5) ياتى ماضى تام بعد الافعال الاتية فى الماضى وهى:

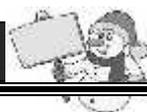
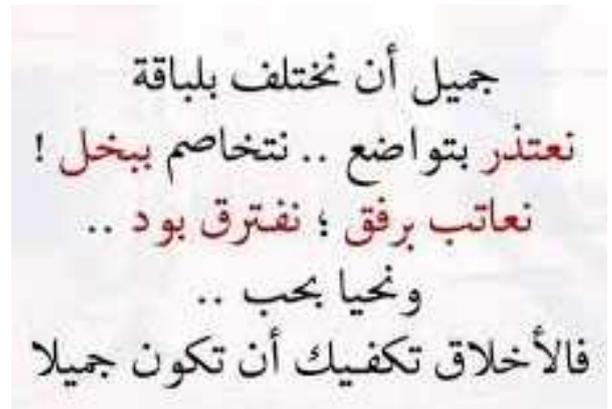
**.....discovered \ found \ realized \ knew.....S. + had + P.P**

Ex: When I arrived home I found that I had forgotten my book at school.



## ملاحظات هامة على الماضى التام:

- (1) إذا لم ياتى بعد **after, before** فاعل فانه ياتى بعدهم فعل به **.ing**  
 Ex: After doing my homework, I went out.  
 Ex: Before going to the cinema, I studied my lessons.
- (2) يمكن إستخدام **Having + P.P**  
**After \ as soon as + S + had + P.P**  
 Ex: After I had ironed the shirt, I went out.  
 Ex: Having had my lunch, I slept.
- (3) يمكن استخدام **On\Immediately on + V-ing**  
**After \ as soon as + S + had + P.P**  
 Ex: As soon as he had arrived home, he slept.  
 Ex: On arriving home, he slept.
- (4) يمكن ان ياتى اسم بعد **after\before + noun**  
 Ex: After the arrival of the manager, we started the meeting.  
 Ex: He had lived a happy life before the death of his father.
- (5) يمكن ان يكون الحدثين مع الرابط فى ومن الماضى البسيط وهذا يدل على التزامن اى ان الحدثين تقريبا حدثا فى نفس الوقت.  
 Ex: When I arrived the station , the train left.  
 Ex: As soon as Mr Mahrous arrived, we started the lesson.
- (6) ياتى بعد **before that** ماضى تام وياتى بعد **after that** ماضى بسيط.  
 Ex: I watched the film but before that I had done my homework.  
 Ex: I had had a shower , after that I went out.
- (7) يمكن استخدام الكلمات الدالة على المضارع التام (**ever, never, just, already, yet, since, for**) مع الماضى التام بشرط وجود جملة ماضى بسيط.  
 Ex: I have already finished my work. (هنا جملة واحدة لذلك استخدمنا المضارع التام)  
 Ex: I had already finished my work when he came. (هنا جملتان ماضى تام وماضى بسيط)



# Homework



## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

**Osama:** (1).....?

**Hamza :** I think Al Ahly is the best team in Egypt?

**Osama:** But I think Al Zamalik is better.

**Hamza :** (2).....?

**Osama:** (3).....?

**Hamza :** Because Al Ahly has won more cups and competitions than Zamalik.

**Osama:** You are right.

**Hamza :** But at least they are the two biggest teams in Egypt.(4).....?

**Osama:** That's true.

## 2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:

1. You disagree with your friend who thinks that the internet is a waste of time.
2. Your friend thinks that Al Zamalik is the best football team in Egypt. You think the opposite.
3. You are with your friend who thinks that Mr Mahrous is a legend .
4. You are against your friend's view who thinks that Arabic is a very easy language.

## 3) Choose the correct answer :

- 1- It can be expensive to feed and ( **clothes - cloth - clothe - clothing** ) children if you have a large family.
- 2- It is often completely ( **silence - silent - silently - slant** ) in the desert at night. You cannot hear anything.
- 3- After Mai had received Hany's e-mail, she ( **sent - had sent - sends - send** ) him her reply .
- 4- Having ( **finding - find - found - finds** ) his mobile, Sami told his father .
- 5- ( **Because - When - After - Till** ) reading the story, I gave it to Salma .
- 6- Before ( **switches - switched - switching - switch** ) on the machine, he had read the instructions .
- 7- He ( **doesn't travel - didn't travel - hadn't travelled - travelled** ) abroad until he had graduated .
- 8- ( **Having - Have - Had - Has** ) had her dinner, she washed the dishes .
- 9- After ( **had put - putting - put - puts** ) my clothes on, I went out .
- 10- By the time I got to the party, most people ( **are going - had gone - have gone - go** ) home .
- 11- They didn't leave the shop ( **while - till - when - during** ) they had paid the bill
- 12- She arrived at the station after the train ( **leaves - was leaving - had left - has left** ), So she missed it .
- 13- He does not like the cold and he really ( **likes - dislikes - like- dislike** ) going outside in the rain.
- 14- She has the same family name as me, but she is no ( **relate - relation - relative - relationship** ) .
- 15- Mr Jones ( **learnt - had learnt - learns - was learning** ) Arabic after he had been to Egypt on holiday.
- 16- I ( **had always lived - always lived - always lives - has always lived** ) in the country before my family moved to Alexandria.
- 17- Samira's father had been a vet before he ( **becomes - became - had become - becoming** ) a science teacher
- 18- Abdu ( **never went - had never gone - never gone - has never gone** ) outside Egypt before he went to Rome
- 19- I was not as good as them because I ( **had come - came - come - has come** ) from a poorer family.
- 20- The man left without ( **thank - thanked - thanks - thanking** ) me.
- 21- A ( **governorate - governor - govern - governess** ) is a woman entrusted with the care and supervision of a child, especially in a private home.



- 22- The floor of my flat was wet so I ( **slapped - slept - sloped - slipped** ) and broke my leg.
- 23- Horses and donkeys have strong ( **hooves - haves - knives - loaves** ) on their legs.
- 24- My brother is very sociable and can get ( **on - in - at - to** ) very well with other people quickly.
- 25- All children should have good ( **education - educate - educated - educationally** ).
- 26- My brother is very cheerful but I'm the ( **oppose - opposition - opposite - opposing** ).
- 27- Some children ( **do - have - make - eat** ) lessons at home when they are ill or disabled.
- 28- I ( **complete - compete - completely - completion** ) agree with you.
- 29- Prisoners don't have any contact with the ( **inside - outside - beside - seaside** ) world.
- 30- I like sitting on the ( **ceiling - roof - hoof - loaf** ) of my house and looking over the countryside.
- 31- My brother has one child but my sister has three ( **child - children - kid - childishly** ).
- 32- I always wear my ( **sun cream - suntan - sunglasses - sun helmet** ) to protect my eyes from the sun.
- 33- My grandfather had ( **learned - taught - educate - listened** ) me a lot of things in the past.
- 34- When I hurt my leg yesterday I was in great ( **pan - bin - pain - painful** ).
- 35- Hisham did not like his school at first, but now he has started to settle ( **of - on - from - in** ).
- 36- I always wear my ( **jumpers - jackets - pullovers - gloves** ) to warm my hands when it is cold.
- 37- Sara cut the apple into two ( **half - halves - hooves - hives** ).
- 38- Our neighbour's child is very ( **natty - naughty - neatly - nutty** ). He always makes a mess.
- 39- Mrs Reed ( **lacked - leaked - lacked - booked** ) Jane in a room upstairs.
- 40- No one have the ( **write - right - ride - weight** ) to interfere in my life.
- 41- My uncle is my mother's ( **father - brother - mother - daughter** ).
- 42- We should make our mobile phones ( **silent - salad - silence - silently** ) during the lesson.
- 43- No sooner ( **mum had - has mum - had mum - did mum** ) finished cooking than we ate .
- 44- They had hardly done their homework ( **than - then - when - while** ) they went out
- 45- I was not hungry because I ( **eat - have eaten - had eaten - have been eating** ) a lot of fruit.
- 46- The doctor didn't do anything as the patient ( **died - has died - was died - had died** ) when he arrived at the hospital .
- 47- She went into the Petrol station because she ( **run - has run - was run - had run** ) out of petrol .
- 48- A good ( **education - relation - pollution - population** ) brings success in a student's later life.
- 49- The knight came ( **in - on - at - of** ) a white horse.
- 50- Abdu managed ( **for - in - to - with** ) fix the chair alone.
- 51- Children should not be ( **learned - teach - learn - taught** ) at home unless they are ill.
- 52- Going to school teaches children to ( **get off - get on - get down - get over** ) well with other people.
- 52- Parents should help their children to do ( **badly - well - good - bad** ) at school.
- 52- Yesterday I was absent from school and I ( **lost - missed - caught - beat** ) an important lesson.
- 52- Young people should ( **learn - protect - fight - teach** ) from older people.
- 52- You can ( **connect - contact - conduct - tie** ) with me on phone or on the internet.

**4) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets to give the same meanings:**

- 1- As soon as we had decorated the office, we moved into it . ( **By the time** )
- 2- Before I traveled to Aswan, I had booked a ticket . ( **After** )
- 3- First, I cleaned the flat. Then, I watched the film on TV . ( **Until** )
- 4- We went home as soon as the match ended . ( **Until** )



- 5- After the customer had paid the bill, he left the shop . ( Having )
- 6- I didn't buy the jacket until I had tried it on . ( After )
- 7- Asmaa arrived home. Then she slept. (No sooner )
- 8- After he had eaten bad food, he fainted. ( hardly)
- 9- He had waited for two hours before her arrival. ( till)

**5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences :**

- 1- Jane afford to take a letter to the post office for Mrs Fairfax.
- 2- Charlotte Bronte was the three of six children.
- 3- It is often completely silence in the desert at night: you cannot hear anything.
- 4- Poor Sara. She has a cold, she's got a pain in her arm and she feels miser.
- 5- A governor is a woman who lives with a family and teaches their children at home.
- 6- Amr didn't see the banana peel under his legs so he slapped.
- 7- Children should not be learned at home unless they are ill.
- 8- Going to school teaches children to keep on well with other people.
- 9- My neighbour's children are very knightly. They always make noise ad chaos.
- 10- Ahmed is no relative to Sami.
- 11- To cloth means to provide clothes for someone.
- 12- No one has the write to interfere in my personal affairs.
- 13- The donkey kicked the boy with its sharp half.
- 14- Mai thinks that English is very easy but Shorouk says the oppose.
- 15- Good players should not shout of referees.

**6) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:**

The miser looked around cautiously. He checked his garden, the bushes and up the tree. Satisfied, he went to his favorite spot and started digging. Soon, a chest came into view. When he opened **it**, the glitter from the contents almost blinded him. He looked happily at the contents. Suddenly he heard a noise. He quickly shoved the chest back into the hole and covered it up. He looked around to see whether there was anyone but to his relief, there was no one. He went into his house. Later that night, a stranger came knocking at his door. The stranger asked for some money and food as he was poor and had a family to feed. The miser quickly said that he himself was poor and had nothing to give. The stranger gave him a knowing look and said, "Those who can help but don't will regret it later." And the stranger left. The next day, the miser went to his favorite spot and started digging. When he opened the chest, he got a shock. It was empty. Instead there was a note inside it. It simply said "Thank you."

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. What did the box contain?
2. Why did the miser lose his treasure?
3. What was written inside the box?
4. Who ,do you think, sent the stranger to the miser?



**B) Choose the correct answer:**

- 5- The underlined pronoun '**it**' refers to -----  
 a) the box      b) the money      c) the hole      d) the note
- 6- The opposite of '**miser**' is -----  
 a) greedy      b) generous      c) wicked      d) mean

**9) Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) only of the following:**

- a) A person who has taught you things in the past.  
 b) A story of a poor girl who lived a miserable life.

**Translation :****10. A) Translate into Arabic :**

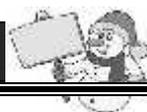
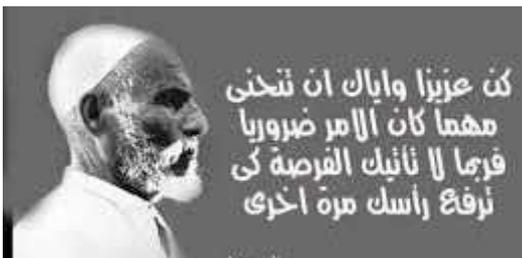
- 1- We should be grateful to those who do us favours.  
 2- In addition to learning from their teachers, children can learn from their parents and friends.

**B) Translate into English :**

2- لم أشاهد الفيلم حتى انهيت عمل واجبي.

**PEOPLE WHO HAVE TAUGHT ME THINGS IN THE PAST****اشخاص علموني اشياء في الماضي**

**In the following lines, I'm going to write about** the advantages and disadvantages of travelling by train. **Firstly** I would like to start with mentioning who those persons were. They were my grandparents. My grandparents were very wise and experienced. They always told me to tell the truth and never tell lies. They also taught me that hard work leads to success. I also learned from them that investment when you are child will benefit you when you are old. Although my grandparents died , I am still learning from my father and my mother. I also learn from my teachers. Finally I would like to say that young people should learn from old people as the latter have the experience and wisdom which the young lack.



## Unit 12

## People at work

teacher	مدرس	tired	متعب
policeman	شرطى	tiring	متعب
flight attendant	مضيفة طيران	vehicles	مركبات
passengers	ركاب	fire	حريق / يفصل من العمل
doctor	طبيب	flights	رحلات جوية
dentist	طبيب اسنان	frightening	مخيف
fireman	رجل مطافى	frightened	خائف
baker	خباز	fright	رعب / خوف
customers	زبائن / عملاء	neatly	بدقة / باحكام
cleaner	عامل نظافة	tooth \ teeth	سنة / اسنان
carpenter	نجار	taste	مذاق / يتذوق
apprentice	صبي (بلية)	training	تدريب
tourist guide	مرشد سياحى	trainer	مدرب
life guard	عامل انقاذ	trainee	متدرب
tourist	سائح	train	يدررب / يتدرب
translator	مترجم	course	دورة دراسية
waiter	نادل / جرسون	qualification	مؤهل
waitress	جرسونة	qualify	يؤهل
oven	فرن	qualified	مؤهل
bread	خبز	improve	يحسن
Loaf \ loaves	رغيف / ارغفة	improvement	تحسن
tins	علب صفيح	prove	يثبت / يبرهن
floors	ارضيات	workshop	ورشة
toilets	حمامات	tidy	منظم
bins	سلال / سلات	untidy	غير منظم
Block of flats	عمارة	flour	دقيق
The States	الولايات	stairs	سلالم
mixture	خليط	injure	يصيب / يؤذى

## Definitions تعريفات

**1 - course** دورة دراسية ( do \ take a course on كورس فى / يؤدى )

- a series of lessons about a subject.

**2 - improve** يحسن ( improvement )

- to become better, or to make something better.

**3 - qualification** مؤهل ( qualify / - qualified )

- examinations that you have passed at school or university.

**4 - translate** يترجم ( translation ترجمة - translator )

- to change speech or writing from one language to another.



## Expressions      تعبيرات

swimming pool	حمام سباحة	prepare lessons	يعد/ يحضر دروس
national holiday	اجازة قومية	warm bread	خبز دافئ (عيش سخن)
foreign companies	شركات اجنبية	tiring jobs	وظائف متعبة
a language school	مدرسة لغات	burning buildings	مبانى محترقة
a historic city	مدينة تاريخية	get married	يتزوج
change jobs	يغير وظائف	good pay	اجر جيد
Secondary Education Certificate	شهادة الثانوية العامة	serve customers	يخدم الزبائن
international flights	رحلات دولية	computer repair company	شركة اصلاح كمبيوتر
make a table \ a chair	يصنع منضدة/كرسى	serve food	يقدم الطعام
road accidents	حوادث الطرق	customers service	خدمة العملاء

### Examples:

- My father works in a language school in Assiut.
- My grandfather is a carpenter and he made me a wonderful table and a chair.
- My sister is getting married soon.
- I wish I could find a job with a good pay.
- Firemen rescued the family from the burning building.
- My mother has changed jobs recently.
- I always buy warm bread from the bakery close to our school.

## Prepositions      حروف جر

look for	يبحث عن	full of	ملء بـ
look up	يبحث عن معنى كلمة	get to	يصل الى
speak to	يتحدث لـ	translate from....into	يترجم من....الى....
speak with	يتحدث مع	die of	يموت من (مرض او جوع)
speak for	يتحدث بلسان	die from	يموت من (لدغة او حرق)
apply for	يتقدم بطلب لوظيفة	die in	يموت فى....
at the end of...	فى نهاية.....	rescue....from	ينقذ.....من
get up	يستيقظ	in danger	فى خطر
on flights	على الرحلات	stay in	يقيم فى
on fire	محترق	stay with	يقيم مع
at home	فى المنزل	find out	يعرف/ يكتشف

### Examples:

- When my house was on fire, a fireman could rescue me from the burning house.
- I don't like staying in hotels.
- You will be in danger if you play with guns.
- If you don't know the meaning of a word, you can look it up in a dictionary.
- Asmaa can translate from English into Arabic.
- I applied for the job immediately after reading the advertisement.

## Language Notes

### ► do \ take a course in

يؤدى / ياخذ دورة فى

Ex: My brother took a course to become a tour guide.

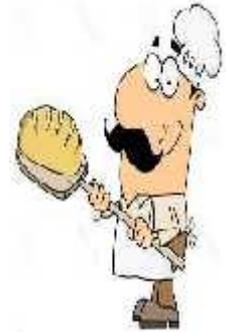


# Listening



## Listen to five people talking about their jobs:

**1 Baker** : I get up very early in the morning – about four o'clock, and I don't finish until three o'clock in the afternoon, but I really love my job. I work in my own street, so I don't have to travel far to get to work. The first thing I do when I get here is to turn on the ovens, so that when the bread is ready, the ovens are the right temperature. Mixing the flour and water together takes a long time, and when I finish that I put the new loaves into tins and then put them in the oven. By eight o'clock my shop is full of warm bread ready for my customers to buy. The rest of the day, I make cakes.



**2 Cleaner** : I do most of my work when other people are at home. Some weeks I work in the evenings and some weeks I work before the office workers arrive. It would be impossible to do my job when everyone was working. I clean the floors and the toilets and I empty all the bins. I don't touch anything on the desks, even if they are very untidy. It's not a bad job, but it is quite tiring.



**3 Fireman** : Of course, it's a very dangerous job sometimes, but we don't spend all our time in burning buildings. Most of our work is going to road accidents, usually when people must be cut out of their vehicles. I have never been badly injured but some of my friends have. Last year, my best friend died in a fire in a block of flats. When I'm working, I don't think about the dangers, because I'm too busy rescuing people – but later, at home, I think about what I've done. That can be very frightening.



**4 Flight attendant** : I mainly work on international flights. This month it's Egypt to China and Japan. Last month all my flights were to the states. It can be a tiring job, but it's usually interesting. There are always lots of things to do, like getting passengers drinks and serving food. I enjoy talking to the passengers. The only part of my job I don't like is staying in hotels in other countries. Next year I'm going to be on national flights – so I'll only have to fly to other towns and cities in Egypt.



**5 Carpenter** : I've done this job since I left school when I was 13. I worked as an apprentice for my grandfather, who had a workshop at the end of our street. I learnt everything from him. The first thing he taught me was how to cut wood neatly with a saw. Now most of my work is repairing things in people's houses, like doors and windows, stairs and floors, but sometimes someone asks me to make a table or chair – and that's what I really enjoy doing.



**READING****READING****A Magazine Interview**

**Samira** : Who do you work for?

**Leila** : On World Travel. It's one of the biggest travel companies in the country.

**Samira** : Why did you apply for the job?

**Leila** : I applied for the job there because I wanted to work for a modern company that works with foreign companies. The company also said they would train me.

**Samira** : What qualifications have you got?

**Leila** : I had to have the Secondary Education Certificate. I also had to speak and write English.

**Samira** : What training have you had?

**Leila** : Before I started, the company sent me on a language course to improve my English and to learn to translate Arabic into English and English into Arabic. I was also taught to use the internet.

**Samira** : How many hours a week do you work?

**Leila** : I work eight hours a day, six days a week, starting on Saturday and finishing on Thursday.

**Samira** : How much holiday do you have a year?

**Leila** : I have three weeks' holiday a year, and I have all the national holidays.

**Samira** : What work did you do at first?

**Leila** : When I started, I spent a week finding out what other people in the company did.

**Samira** : What do you do now?

**Leila** : Now I write e-mails and I answer telephone from other countries. Sometimes I also have to translate letters from English into Arabic.

**Samira** : Do you like your job?

**Leila** : Yes, I really e my job. I enjoy meeting and talking customers from all over the world.

**QUESTIONS & ANSWERS**

**1- How many hours a week does Leila work?**

- 8 hours a day – six days a week.

**2- Why did Leila apply for this job?**

- Because Leila wanted to work for a modern company that works with foreign companies

**3- Does Leila have to work on 6<sup>th</sup> October?**

- No, because it's a public holiday.

**4- What did Leila do when she started this job?**

- She found out what other people in the company did .

**5- What does Leila have to do now? \ What does a secretary do?**

- She writes letters and e-mails , answers phone calls and sometimes translates letters .

**6- Why is it important for someone in a travel company to speak English well?**

- English is an international language spoken by many people as a second language. A person in a travel company would need to speak to people from many countries.

**7- Do you think Leila will need to be best at speaking , listening , reading or writing English?**

- She will probably need all four language skills: listening and speaking ( for phone calls and meetings ), reading and writing ( for letters, e-mails, reading brochures etc... ) .



**8- Why do you think Leila will need to be able to translate from and into Arabic ?**

- There will be documents \ letters, etc, which need to be read by people who know only Arabic and others by people who don't know any Arabic .

**9- How do you think Leila uses the internet in her work?**

- To book flights and other travel reservations, to check times, to find accommodation, to research holiday destinations and tourist attractions etc..... .

**10- What are the advantages of speaking to people in their languages?**

- It is easier to communicate, but also easier to understand possible cultural differences. It also leads to respect and mutual understanding .

**11- How can the internet be used to improve people's lives ?**

- To learn language. It can help people with their education, research and various skills such as spelling. It can give the access to up- to- date information from anywhere in the world. It can provide access to an increasing range of services, saving travel, money and time.

**12- Do you think being able to use the internet will become more or less important in the future? Why ?**

- It will be more important because it can provide us with a lot of information about any branches of science and fields. It can facilitate our work and help us to perform any task easily and accurately

**13- Which job would you like to do ?**

- A tour guide: to research information about places of interests. To deal with foreigners and acquire useful experience.

**14- What qualities would you need to get this job ?**

- A good command of foreign languages, having a pleasant character, knowledgeable.

**15- Why do you think each job needs someone who can speak English ?**

- Because it is an international language and to be able to communicate with others easily.

**16- As a student, how can you use the internet?**

- I may use the internet for my studies, for entertainment or making friends with other people around the world.



\* To ask about work place

للسؤال عن جهة العمل

- **Who do you work for ?**

\* To ask about reasons for wanting job

للسؤال عن أسباب الرغبة في هذه الوظيفة

- **Why did you apply this job ?**

\* To ask about qualifications needed

للسؤال عن المؤهلات المطلوبة

- **What qualifications did you need for this job ? (do) ومن الممكن**

\* To ask about training

للسؤال عن التدريب

- **What training did you do ? What training did you need to do ? (do) و**

\* To ask about work hours

- **How many hours do you work ?**

\* To ask about holiday

- **How much holiday do you have ?**

\* To ask about job duties

- **What work do you have to do ?**

\* To ask about job satisfaction

- **What do you like about your job ?**

\* To ask about future hopes

للسؤال عن آمال مستقبلية

- **What would you like to do in the future ?**





## A) Statement

Direct Speech :

ننقل نفس الكلام الذي قيل من الشخص ولذلك نضعه بين علامات تنصيص " ....."

*Ali said, " I will visit my uncle tomorrow . "*

Reported Speech : الكلام غير المباشر

ننقل الكلام لشخص آخر لذلك نغير بعض الأجزاء في الحديث لا نستخدم علامات تنصيص

*Ali said that he would visit his uncle the next day .*

**كيف نحول الجملة الخبرية من الكلام المباشر إلى الكلام المنقول :**

هناك خمس أشياء أساسية عند التحويل من مباشر إلى غير مباشر الا وهي:

(1) \_\_\_\_\_ وهنا نحول *said* *said* *said to* *told*

(2) \_\_\_\_\_ وهنا نربط باستخدام كلمة *that* ويمكن حذفها.

(3) \_\_\_\_\_

معظم الجمل يتم التحويل كالتالي

**I** → he, she

**you** → he, she, I, they

**My** → his, her

**your** → his, her, my, their

**Me** → him, her

**you** → him, her, me, them

(4) \_\_\_\_\_

غير الأزمنة من المضارع إلى الماضي

*present simple ( first from / first from + s\es )* → *past simple ( second from )*

*past simple ( second from )* → *past perfect ( had + p.p )*

*present perfect ( has / have + p.p )* → *past perfect ( had + p.p )*

*present continuous ( am / is / are + v-ing )* → *past continuous ( was / were + v-ing )*

*can* → *could*      *will* → *would*      *may* → *might*

*shall* → *should*      *must / have to / has to + inf* → *had to + inf*

(5) الظروف الزمنية:

غير ظروف الزمان وظروف المكان كالتالي :

**This** → that

**today** → that day

**These** → those

**tonight** → that night

**Here** → there

**yesterday** → the day before / the previous day

**Now** → then

**tomorrow** → the next day / the following day

**Ago** → before

**last ...** → the ... Before /the previous ...

**Next ...** → the .... after /the following ...

وعند التحويل من الكلام المنقول إلى الكلام المباشر اعكس كل ما سبق

1- Mohamed said to the interviewer, " I'm working for a computer repair company. " (**Mohamed told ...**)

2- Samira said, " I haven't been to the Zoo for a long time. " (**Samira said that ....**)

3- Ali said to his son, " I'll take you to the cinema today . " (**told**)

4- Ramy said, " I can't afford a holiday this year . " (**told**)

5- Ali said, " I need to repair my car today . " (**said that**)

6- Hussein said he was making special cakes the following day . (**Hussein said, "....."**)



7- He said one of their ovens had been repaired the month before . ( He said, "....." )

8- He told me that he would meet his friend the following week . (said to )

9- He said to me, "You must be ill." (He told me.....)

10- He said to me, "You must get up early to catch your bus." (He told me...)

## Notes ملاحظات

\* **We don't change tenses when :** لا نغير الأزمنة عندما

1- لا نغير الأزمنة ( say \ says \ tell \ tells ) لا نغير الأزمنة .  
- Ali says, " I have been to Paris three times . "

2- إذا كانت الجملة قيلت منذ وقت قصير لا نغير الأزمنة ولا ظروف الزمان  
**Said just now / a moment ago / a minuet ago / a short time ago**  
- Dalia said just now, " I will sell my old car . "

3- إذا كانت الجملة داخل علامات التنصيص تعبر عن حقيقة ثابتة لا نغير الأ  
- The teacher said to students, " The earth is round . "

4- إذا كانت الجملة داخل علامات التنصيص تعبر عن عادة متكررة لا نغير الأزمنة  
- Ahmed said, " I go to school every day . "

5- جملة داخل علامات التنصيص في حالة **If** الثانية أو الثالثة فلا نغير الأزمنة  
- Ali said to me, " If I played well, I would win . "

6- نغير حالة **If** الأولى إلى الثانية وتظل الحالة الثانية والثالثة كما هي دون تغيير.  
- Shaimaa said, " If I have money, I will buy a car . "

7- لربط جملتين إربطهما ب **and that** and added that  
- Roba said " I will visit you tomorrow ' She also said " I will bring you a nice present . "

8- س يخرج ويوضع بعد فعل القول  
Reda said, " I want to use your mobile, Asmaa . "

9- لو وجد فعل القول في وسط الجملة أو نهايتها يوضع في أولها  
" It was a difficult test for me " said Ali

10- **must** زامية إلى **had to** **must** الاستنتاجية إلى **must have + P.P**  
" You must be ill , Rami " said Ali

" You must obey your parents, Sahar " said the teacher.



11- لا تتغير الصيغ الآتية عند التحويل من مباشر الى غير مباشر وهي:

Used to – ought to – 'd rather – 'd better

" I used to go to school on foot." said Salim.

" You ought to do your homework, Mai " said Asmaa.

### لاحظ تحويل الجمل الآتية:



### Advice

It's a good idea / ought to / should أو تعبيرات النصيحة استخدم

-12

التركيب التالي للتحويل إلى الكلام المنقول

S + advised + obj + to / not to + inf .....

The doctor said to her, " You should take this medicine twice a day . "



### Suggestions

-13

What about + v-ing ..... ?

How about + v-ing ..... ?

Why don't we + inf ..... ?

Shall we + inf ..... ?

Let's + Inf ..... ?

حول إلى التركيب

S + suggested + v-ing ..... أو

S + suggested that + we .....

- Ali said, " Let's buy our mother a mobile . "



### Thanking

Thank you أو أى معنى للشكر نحولها إلى

-14

S + thanked + obj + for + v-ing

- Ahmed said to his father " Thank you because you helped me . "

- Dalia said to Bassma, " It's kind of you to help me . "



### Apology

S + apologized to + obj + for + V-ing.....

- Salma said to Nancy, " I'm sorry but I have broken your Camera . "



### offer

\* 'would you like + Obj.+ to + Inf....?' ———> offered + to+ Inf.

- Mona said, " Would you like me to help you mum?" "



# Homework



## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

- Waiter** : Welcome sir, .....(1)?  
**Ahmed** : I'll start with some pickles.  
**Waiter** : .....(2)?  
**Ahmed** : Chicken please.  
**Waiter** : .....(3)?  
**Ahmed** : Grilled please.  
**Waiter** : .....(4) the dessert?  
**Ahmed** : Orange juice please.  
**Waiter** : Anything else?  
**Ahmed** : No, thanks.

## 2) Write that you would say in each of the following situations :

- 1- Your sister Salma says "I won't be home for lunch" Report this to your mother .
- 2- You want permission from your father to go to the cinema tonight .
- 3- You ask someone for the reason for wanting a job.
- 4- Some asks you about the job you would like to do when you leave school.

## 3) Choose the correct answer :

- 1- I want to (**improve - best - good - higher**) my English. I am taking extra lessons next week .
- 2- A person who buys things in a shop is a / a (**assistant - customer - seller - guard**)
- 3- She answers telephone calls (**at - in - from - to**) other countries .
- 4- She likes the people she works (**at - with - of - in**)
- 5- She starts work (**in - on - at - of**) Saturday morning .
- 6- She's learning how to translate English (**for - from - into - at**) Arabic.
- 7- She would like to work in another country (**at - in - for - on**) the future .
- 8- She was interested (**at - of - on - in**) working for a modern company.
- 9- Leila applied (**to - in - for - on**) a new job last week .
- 10- If your tooth hurts, you should go and see a (**nurse - dentist - cleaner - scientist**)
- 11- The bread that our (**beaker - baker - breaker - cooker**) makes always tastes very good
- 12- The (**guides - fireman - fire makers - fireworks**) rescued two old people from the burning flat .
- 13- The (**flight attendants - drivers - waiters - pilots**) were busy because the plane was full of passengers.
- 14- That hotel has a swimming (**pool - pole - pond - canal**)
- 15- An (**attendant - assistant - assurance - fighter**) helps customers in a shop .
- 16- If you buy something in a shop, you are the shop's (**customer - guest - patient - shopper**)
- 17- First-aid men are too busy (**rescuing - retesting - rendering - reflecting**) people who are injured in car accidents .
- 18- The baker turned on the (**oven - cooker - refrigerator - stone**) to make bread
- 19- A carpenter cuts the wood with a (**nail - saw - fork - knife**)
- 20- An (**apprentice - applicant - employer - manager**) works to learn a skill .
- 21- She (**applied - advised - implied - replied**) for a job at a bank .
- 22- He went on a long and (**tired - tiring - tidy - dirty**) journey .
- 23- " We have a holiday " . The boys said they (**had - have - were having - have had**) a holiday .
- 24- He said that the Earth (**was moved - was moving - moves - moved**) round the sun.



- 25- He ( **says - told - will say - said** ) he was working for a computer repair company .
- 26- What ( **qualifications - combinations - situations - stations** ) do you have to get a job ?
- 27- He said he ( **has to - had to - have to - can** ) get up early in that morning .
- 28- He said he ( **was leaving - is leaving - leaves - will leave** ) his job at the end of his week
- 29- A famous ( **engineer - dentist - architect - carpenter** ) designed our school
- 30- Mustafa said he ( **has - had - is - was** ) flown to London the week before .
- 31- You will get good ( **money - pay - coins - notes** ) if you are trained .
- 32- My mother works ( **on - out - up - for** ) computer repair company .
- 33- ( **Mix - Grind - Pack - Empty** ) the flour and water together to make bread .
- 34- I'll buy 5 ( **loaves - leaves - leaflets - lifts** ) of bread .
- 35- Mother turned the oven ( **on - off - out - down** ) to make some cakes .
- 36- I asked the flight attendant which food they ( **cook - make - serve - sell** ) on the plane .
- 37- I think all the pupils are ready ( **for - of - on - from** ) the exams .
- 38- My sister works ( **like - such as - as - for example** ) a nurse .
- 39- I really enjoy ( **play - plays - played - playing** ) squash .
- 40- A successful person should ( **do - make - take - give** ) his job properly.
- 41- Ramy spends most of his time ( **in - at - for - from** ) reading stories
- 42- The ( **fly - flying - flight - flyer** ) to Dubai takes off at 10 pm .
- 43- Two firemen died in a fire in a ( **plot - block - pocket - packet** ) of flats
- 44- Aya Salah ( **said - says - said to - told** ) Salma that she was busy making some cakes .
- 45- Islam said that he ( **wants - want - wanted - will want** ) to do something more interesting .
- 46- Peter told us that he ( **may - will - can - would** ) come the following week .
- 47- Micheal said that he ( **choose - choosing - chooses - chose** ) Alexandria because it was a historic city.
- 48- Dalia thanked me ( **to lend - to lending - for lending - lending** ) some money .
- 49- Nour suggested ( **to watch - watching - to watching - watch** ) a film on TV .
- 50- The headmaster says that he ( **would be - was - had been - is** ) ready to help all the pupils .
- 51- Reham said her favourite drink ( **are - has been - was - was being** ) orange juice
- 52- My uncle taught me how ( **to use - using - use - used** ) the computer.
- 53- Actors ( **do - perform - make - work** ) in plays .
- 54- The normal ( **temperature - height - weight - standard** ) of my body is 37 .
- 55- A cleaner must finish his work before the office workers ( **eat - arrive - leave - depart** )
- 56- You should keep your bedroom clean and ( **empty - crowded - untidy - tidy** )
- 57- Last night Wael called for a doctor to ( **imitate - congratulate - invite - treat** ) Huda who was ill .
- 58- Mohamed lives ( **near - far - away - beside** ) to Mansoura .
- 59- He said that the first thing he ( **do - does - did - done** ) when he got there was to turn on the ovens .
- 60- They said that they ( **'ve - 'll - 'd - 's** ) leave for Ganda the next day .
- 61- Samar told Hagar that ( **hers - my - his - her** ) new dress was expensive
- 62- He told her that he had visited Kafr El Sheikh ( **then - yesterday - the day before - the next day** ) .
- 63- He said that ( **his - hers - me - my** ) favourite drink was orange juice
- 64- The company sent him on a language ( **duration - service - curricula - course** ) to improve his English .
- 65- A " ( **bodyguard - guard - lifeguard - guardian** ) " is someone whose job is to help swimmers who are in danger at the beach or a swimming pool .
- 66- The criminal is ( **needed - thought - required - wanted** ) dead or alive .
- 67- A teacher should ( **prepare - make - predict - detect** ) lessons before going to school
- 68- They told me that the sun ( **rise - rose - rises - risen** ) in the east .
- 69- The ( **cleaner - painter - carpenter - carrier** ) repaired the cupboard well .
- 70- He put the new loaves into ( **bags - tins - bins - bottles** ) and put them in the oven .



- 71- She has the Secondary Education ( **certificate - centre - mark - school** )  
 72- How ( **many - much - match - toll** ) holiday do you have a year ?  
 73- I have three ( **week's - week - weeks - weeks'** ) holiday a year .  
 74- We are facing a very ( **hardly - hardness - hardy - hard** ) problem  
 75- I've ( **hard - hardly - hardship - harden** ) done any school work this weekend .  
 76- Omar said that his car ( **repaired - had repaired - was repairing - had been repaired** ) the day before .  
 77- Noha said she ( **makes - is making - was making - has made** ) coffee then .

**4) Rewrite :**

- 1- He said one of their ovens had been repaired the month before . ( **He said, " ..... "** )  
 .....  
 2- He said his wife and children often helped him to mix the flour and water ( **"....."** )  
 .....  
 3- Hussein said he was making special cakes the following day. ( **"....."** )  
 .....  
 4- I'm really looking forward to my holiday . ( **John said** )  
 .....  
 5- She said the only part of her job she didn't like was staying in hotels. ( **" ..... "** )  
 .....  
 6- She said, " I will take you to my house ' . ( **She told me** )  
 .....  
 7- Hani said, " I'm reading a lovely story now . " ( **He said that ..... )**  
 .....  
 8- Dina said to me, " I have stayed here with my aunt for 3 days . " ( **Dina told .... )**  
 .....  
 9- The Captain said, " I'm sure we'll win this match today. " ( **The Captain said that ....** )

**5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences :**

- 1- To communicate is to change from one language into another.
- 2- A life tourist helps swimmers who are in danger at the beach.
- 3- I am taking English lessons to prove my English.
- 4- I applied for a work as a tour guide.

**6) Read the following passage , then answer the questions:**

Before my uncle became a tour guide, he had been a sales assistant at a shop in London. That's where he learned to speak good English! He had also worked as a flight attendant. He said that it was very tiring, so he took a course to become a tour guide.

However, he thinks that this job is changing. He already has to write a blog about what he does every day. He thinks that in the future, all tourists will have digital devices that can tell them about the places they visit. He thinks that they won't need tour guides in the future, but he does not worry. He said that if he wasn't a tour guide, he would apply to work for the company that made digital devices for tourists.

**A) Answer the following questions:**

1. Where did the uncle learn to speak English?
2. Which job did he find tiring?
3. Why do you think the uncle has to write a blog every day?
4. What does he think tourists won't need in the future?





## Revision D

written	on TV \ radio	/
websites	on a website	
colleague	on the edge of	
blog	work with	
special	the third of....	/
practice	look after	
practise	The nineteenth century	
Pen friend	serious	/
useful	seriously	/
realise	Language skill	
probably	imaginary	
abroad	include	/
aboard	reference	
exactly	completely	
outside	possible	
Japanese	perhaps	/
reply	maybe	/
brilliant	poet	/
address	poetry	
comments	character	
communicate	slums	
write a blog	common	/
English-speaking countries	overcrowded	
written English	shantytown	
spoken English	shacks	/
make comments	sanitation	
free time	crime	
governess	housing	
miserable	materials	/
pen name	manual labour	
successful	informal	
success	illegal	
contact with	residents	
communicate with	residence	
	workers	



## Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - housing** إسكان  
- houses for people to live in.
- 2 - illegal** غير قانوني  
- not allowed by law.
- 3 - manual labour** عمل يدوي  
- work using your hands, especially doing hard physical work.
- 4 - material** مادة  
- a substance such as wood, plastic, paper, etc. from which things can be made.
- 5 - resident** ساكن / مقيم  
- someone who lives in a house.
- 6 - sanitation** نظافة عامة  
- the protection of public health by removing and treating wastes, dirty water etc.
- 7 - shack** عشة / كوخ  
- a small building that has not been very well built.
- 8 - shantytown** مدينة اكواخ / عشش  
- an area of badly built temporary buildings where very poor people live.

## READING

## READING

### Charlotte Bronte

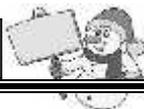
Charlotte Bronte, the writer of Jane Eyre, was born in the north of England in 1816. She was the third of six children. Her mother's sister, Elizabeth, looked after the children because Charlotte's mother had died when she was five.

When their father was at work, Charlotte helped her aunt to look after her younger sisters in the quiet village where they lived. In their free time, Charlotte, her brother Branwell and her sisters Emily and Anne wrote poems and stories.. From 1835 to 1838, Charlotte was a school teacher. Then, in 1839, she worked as a governess to a number of families. In 1842, Charlotte travelled to Europe to teach English, but she was miserable and returned to England the following year.

In 1846, Charlotte wrote a collection of poems with her sisters Emily and Anne. Instead of using their real names, they called themselves Currer, Ellis and Acton Bell. These could be men's or women's names, and the sisters chose them to hide the fact that they were women. At that time in England, people thought that women should not write books and did not take their work seriously. The people who read Charlotte's novels were not sure whether she was a man or a woman.

By the year of 1850, Charlotte's brother and sisters had all died and Charlotte and her father lived alone together. Because her novel Jane Eyre was so successful, Charlotte sometimes visited London and made contact with other writers. Soon, everyone realized that Charlotte was a woman and learnt that, like her characters Jane, she was a very strong, clever woman.

Charlotte continued to look after her father and in 1854, married a man who worked with her father. Sadly, in 1855, at the age of 38, Charlotte Bronte died.



## QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

**1- How many brothers and sisters did Charlotte have?**

She had five.

**2- How old was Charlotte among her brothers and sisters?**

She was the third of six children.

**3- What did Charlotte do in 1843?**

She returned back to England.

**4- Who were Elizabeth and Branwell?**

Elizabeth was Charlotte's aunt and Branwell was Charlotte's brother.

**5- In what ways were Charlotte and Jane Eyre the same?**

They were both strong, clever women.

**6- Why did Charlotte and her sisters write under pen names \ fake names?**

To hide the fact that they were women.

**7- Why did Charlotte and her sisters hide the fact that they were women on writing a collection of poems?**

Because at that time in England, people thought women should not write books and did not take their work seriously.

**8- What was Charlotte Bronte most successful book?**

It was Jane Eyre.

## EXTRA READING

### The Growth Of Slums

Slums were very common in the time of Oliver Twist, but they are still common in many cities today. A slum may be an overcrowded shantytown on the edge of a large city where people live. Or it may be an old part near the centre of a city. People's homes may be one-room shacks or ordinary buildings, but often the homes have no clean water, electricity or sanitation. In some slums, like those in Rio de Janeiro in Brazil, there is a lot of crime and it can be dangerous for the police to go into them.

Although there have always been very poor areas in large cities, slums grew quickly in many parts of the world in the 1970s and 1980s when people left their homes in the country to look for work. When people arrived in the cities, there was often no work or housing for them, so they built their own homes out of things they found: wood, metal and other materials. Some of the people who live in today's slums were found around factories in English cities like London or Manchester. The residents were usually factory workers who were paid very little money. Since the time of Oliver Twist, everyone has worked hard to improve housing, and today there are no slums in cities like London and Manchester.

The United Nations has said that there are a billion people in the world today living in slums. The number could be two billion by 2030. The slums of today, in cities like Mumbai, Jakarta or Rio de Janeiro, are usually in areas where most of the people have no work and no money.



## QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

1- What is a slum?

A slum may be an overcrowded shantytown on the edge of a large city where poor people live.

2- Which city is used as an example of a slum where there is a lot of crime?

Rio de Janeiro in Brazil.

3- What kinds of jobs do people who live in slums do?

Selling things in the street or manual labour.

4- Why do you think slum residents do informal or illegal jobs?

Because they are homeless and have no identity.

5- How many people may be living in slums by the year 2030?

The number could be two billion.

6- How can governments solve the problems of slums?

By building them good shelters and finding them good work.

7- How can the slums residents affect society?

People who live in slums are poor and homeless. Most of them could be criminals and thieves.



### REVISION D

(Workbook pages 73- 76)

#### A. Language Functions

**1) Finish the following dialogue:**

Hala : 1).....?

Fareeda : For next weekend? Yes, I plan to go to the beach.

Hala : 2).....?

Fareeda : To the science museum? That will be interesting.

Hala : I think that the science museum is better than the art museum.

Fareeda : Yes.3).....?

Hala : So will you come to the science museum with me next time?

Fareeda : OK.4).....?

**2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

a. You borrow a book from a friend .

b. You take your father's umbrella to school because it is raining. Your father tells you not to forget to bring it home

c. Your friend thinks that English is very difficult.

d. Your grandmother is carrying a heavy bag. You want to help her.

#### B. Language and Structure

**3 Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. Hamdi has left university and now he is going to ..... for a job at a bank.

a) apply    b) advertise    c) judge    d) graduate

2. The shop assistant showed me how to..... this device to a computer.

a) make    b) put    c) connect    d) compliment

3. I like insects, but I really ..... flies.

a) not like    b) no like    c) dislike    d) like not

4. The road through the mountains is very icy, so be careful you do not .....

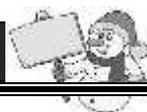
a) slip    b) settle    c) sleep    d) drive

5. The footballer could not continue playing because he was .....

a) silent    b) injured    c) bright    d) complicated

6. To cook the bread, put it in the for an hour.

a) fridge    b) heater    c) stove    d) oven



7. Amira ..... buy a Jacket for her new job at the hotel .  
 a) will                      b) is going to                      c) is going                      d) to
8. Do you think that Cairo ..... bigger in the future?  
 a) is                      b) is going to be                      c) will be                      d) going to be
9. Dalia ..... in Luxor before she moved to Alexandria.  
 a) living                      b) has lived                      c) had lived                      d) was lived
10. They ..... a bus to their hotel after they had arrived at the airport.  
 a) take                      b) had taken                      c) had took                      d) took
11. Tarek told me that orange juice ..... his favourite drink.  
 a) is                      b) be                      c) was                      d) been
12. She asked me ..... she could help me with my homework.  
 a) whether                      b) weather                      c) that                      d) for

**4) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning.**

1. Samir didn't go to the club until he had finished work. (By the time)  
 .....
2. During my stay in Hurghada, I met my old friends. (while)  
 .....
3. " You must revise well for the final exam, Leila," Father said. (told)  
 .....
4. I will attend the conference as planned. (going)  
 .....

**5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

- They asked her if she knew about recent develops in technology
- They sa id that they wanted her to work on social net sites.
- She told them that she could use complicate smart phones and computers.
- I am taking English lessons to invite my English.

**C. Reading Comprehension**

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

**My uncle**

Before my uncle became a tour guide, he had been a sales assistant at a shop in London. That's where he learned to speak good English. He had also worked as a flight attendant. He said that it was very tiring, so he took a course to become a tour guide. However, he thinks that his job is changing. He already has to write a blog about what he does every day. He thinks that in the future, all tourists will have digital devices that can tell them about the places they visit. He thinks that they won't need tour guides in the future, but he does not worry. He said that if he wasn't a tour guide, he would apply to work for the company that made digital devices for tourists'

- Where did the uncle learn to speak English?
- Which job did he find tiring?
- Why do you think the uncle has to write a blog every day?
- What does he think tourists won't need tour guides in the future?
- In the future, who or what will help tourists to know about the places they are visiting?  
 a. tour guides                      b. flight attendants  
 c. digital devices                      d. nothing will help them
- Why is the uncle not worried about his job?  
 a. Because he can't do the job very well.                      b. Because he thinks he will get another job.  
 c. Because it makes him miserable.                      d. Because it's very tiring.



**7) Answer only FOUR (4) of the following questions:**

- Why did Jane Eyre often climb onto the roof of Thornfield Hall?
- Why did Jane walk to the village of Hay?
- What happened to the gentleman on the icy road?
- Why do you think the gentleman was surprised to hear that Jane was the governess at Thornfield Hall?
- Why do you think it was difficult for Jane to catch the horse?
- Why do you think the gentleman did not thank Jane for helping him back on his horse?

**D. The Novel****8) Answer the following questions:**

1. Why did Dr Losberne visit Mrs. Maylie's country house?

.....

2. Who did Oliver see looking at him through the window?

.....

3. Where did Mr. Bumble first meet Monks?

.....

4. Why do you think Oliver was so happy at Mrs. Maylie's country house?

.....

5. Why do you think Harry asked Oliver to write to him often?

.....

"Perhaps you have some money for this information?" Mrs Bumble suggested. Monks put a bag of coins on the table in front of her. Mrs Bumble then told Monks what happened on the night that Nurse Sally died.

6. What is the information that Mrs Bumble tells Monks?

.....

7. How does she know this information?

.....

8. What kind of person is Mrs Bumble/ How do we know this?

.....

**E. Writing****9) Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) of the following:**

- a job you would like to do.
- types of communication in the future.

**E. Translation****10) a. Translate into Arabic:**

1. He's going to send a message to a friend.

.....

2. After the baker has finished making bread, he makes cakes.

.....

**b. Translate into English:**

- م أرك منذ بداية الدراسة.

.....



## Great works of engineering

work	( ) يعمل /	earthquakes	
A work \ works		volcanoes	براكين
engineering	هندسة / هندسى	lighthouse	
engineer	مهندس / يدير بحكمة	The high dam	
altitude		a tower	
permanent		towering	شاهق /
permanently		affect	يؤثر
temporary		affection	
temporarily		effect	تأثير
run	يجرى / يدير	effective	
supply	يمد /	effectively	بفاعلية
supplier		charge	يكلف /
regular		operate	يشغل
regularly		operation	عملية
railway	سكة حديد	section	
stage	/	sect	
half \ halves		short	قصير
experience		shorten	يقصر
expert	خبير	canal	/
caller	ياقة /	waterway	/
project		income	/
facts		around	/
open	يفتح /	government	
exactly		journey	
point		link	يرتبط /
passengers		The east	
tunnel	/	The west	
include	يشمل / يتضمن	right	/ صحیح / يمين
inclusion	/	era	
including	بما فيه /	fire	حريق / يفصل من العمل
bridges		century	
flyovers	كبارى علوية	The universe	
incredible	لا يصدق	universal	
incredibly	بطريقة لا تصدق	company	/ /
altogether	سويا	BCE	قبل عصر المسيح " عليه السلام "
All together		directions	اتجاهات
stations		authority	
specially		special	/ مميز
levels	/ مستويات	several	عديد

advice	نصيحة	massive	
advise	ينصح	invaders	
adviser	/	warn	يحذر
river	نهر	prevent	يمنع
stream	نهر صغير /	prevention	/
remove	يزيل	charity	/ خير /
removal		charitable	خيري
flood	فيضان / يفيض	Whose....?	....
vision	رؤية	spices	
persistence		lengthy	طويل
leadership	قيادة	perishable	
convenient		cargo	
otherwise		distance	/ يبعد /
complex		imagination	خيال

## Definitions تعريفات

### 1 - altitude مرتفع

- the height above the sea.

### 2 - permanently بشكل دائم

- for all future time.

### 3 - run يجري - يدير

- to go from one place to another at regular times.

### 4 - supply امداد - مخزون

- An amount of something that can be used.

### 5 - affect يؤثر (تأثير "on" effect)

- to cause a change in someone or something.

### 6 - charge يكلف (مسؤول عن in charge of)

- to ask someone to pay a particular amount of money for something.

### 7 - operate يشغل (operation / )

- to manage and control a business.

### 8 - section قسم

- one of the parts that an object, group, place, etc. is divided into.

### 7 - stages مراحل

- states or levels that someone or something reaches in a process.

### 8 - sea level مستوى البحر

- the average level of the sea, used as a standard for measuring the height of land.

### 9 - frozen ground ارض متجمدة

- ground that is hard because the temperature is below zero. It has become hard like ice.





Examples:

- Please take care of my baby while I'm out.
- The princess wants to take her father's throne back.
- My brother took part in an art competition at school.
- An accident took place yesterday in our street.
- The prince took the place of his father.
- Please take away these empty dishes.
- Rodaina takes after her mother greatly.
- Our teacher asked us to take out our books.
- I couldn't take in all yesterday math's lesson.
- Don't be taken by appearances.
- The programme takes up a lot of memory on the hard drive.
- His son will take over the business.
- The mechanic took apart my car to repair the engine.
- The captain asked his crew to take down the sails during a storm.
- Mai has taken to eating so much chocolate.
- My plane takes off at 8 a.m. tomorrow.
- Please take your shoes off before you enter the flat.

**Language Notes**▶ **at all**

على الإطلاق

▶ **in all**

فى الجمل

Ex: I don't think at all that he will marry her.Ex: In all , 20,000 people worked on the line.▶ **altogether**

بالإجمال / تماما

▶ **all together**

سويا / كل ذلك معا

Ex: Altogether, there are 45 stations in the China to Tibet railway.Ex: Can you put your books all together in this box?☺ **Job**

وظيفة (إسم يعد)

☺ **Work**

يعمل / عمل (لا تعد)

☺ **A works**

عمل فنى (إسم يعد)

☺ **Profession**

مهنة (تحتاج لتعليم وتدريب خاص مثل التدريس والطب)

☺ **Occupation**

مهنة / عمل

☺ **Career**

حياة مهنية

Ex: My father's job is a teacher.Ex; My father works in a school.Ex: There are a lot of works in this museum.Ex: Teaching and medicine are difficult professions.Ex: you should write about your occupation in your CV.Ex: My father spent most of his career as a teacher.▶ **effect (on)**

أثر / تأثير

▶ **affect**

يؤثر (بدون حرف جر)

Ex: Smoking has a bad effect on your health.Ex: World business was affected by the opening of the Suez Canal.

- **engineering** (noun) هندسة  
 ► **engineering** (adj) هندسي

**Ex:** My brother decided to study engineering.

**Ex:** The metro is a big engineering project in Egypt.

الاعداد الاتية لا يضاف لها  الجمع اذا سبقت برقم / عدد وهي :

Hundred , thousand , million, billion

اما اذا لم تسبق بعدد فانه يضاف لها  الجمع.

Examples:

- Two million pounds is a big sum of money
- Thousands of workers helped in the building of the pyramids.
- My friend asked me to lend him two hundred pounds.
- Millions of people took part in the demonstrations.

يتكون الفعل احيانا باضافة en للصفة او الاسم :

Adj. \ noun	Verb
wide	widen يوسع
length	lengthen يطول
deep	deepen يُعمق
short	shorten يقصر
strength	strengthen يقوى
weak	weaken يضعف
sharp	sharpen يحد

**Ex:** The Suez Canal has **shortened** the distance between the east and the west.

**Ex:** My trousers are too long. My mother is going to **shorten** them.

### Asking for and giving advice طلب واعطاء النصيحة

#### ☛ Asking for advice:

- What is your advice.....?
- What do you think that I should .....
- Can I ask your advice.....?
- Could you give me some advice.....?
- What should I do to.....?
- What do you advise me to do to.....?
- How would you suggest that we.....?

#### ☛ Giving advice

- I don't think that you should.....
- I think that you should,.....
- I'd think twice about.....
- If I were you, I'd.....
- If you want my honest opinion.....





## Listening

- Presenter** : Our programme today is about the highest railway line in the world: the China to **Tibet railway**. In our studio we have Michael Chen, a railway **engineering expert**.  
If we have any questions you would like to ask our expert this morning, phone us and we'll do our best to answer them. Our first caller today is Khalid, who is phoning from Cairo. What's your question, Khalid?
- KHALID** : Good morning. I'd like to know some facts about the railway. How long is this line, and when was it built?
- Mr Chen** : Hi, Khalid. Well, the line was built in two **stages**: the first stage, which was started in 1951, did not open until 1984. This stage is 815 kilometres long. The second stage is another 1,142 kilometres long. This stage was opened in 2006.
- KHALID** : Thanks. Can I ask you for one more fact?
- Mr Chen** : Yes, of course.
- KHALID** : I know this is the highest railway line in the world, but exactly how high is it?
- Mr Chen** : Well, about half the line is over 4,000 metres above sea level, and at its highest point – the Tanggula Pass – it's 5,072 metres . At this **altitude**, the air is very thin, so all the passengers are given a supply of Oxygen.
- KHALID** : Really? That's amazing. That's like being on a plane.
- Mr Chen** : That's right.
- Presenter** : Thanks, Khalid. Our next caller is Rami from Alexandria. What's your question, Rami?
- Rami** : Hello. I'd like to know how difficult it was for engineers to build this railway.
- Mr Chen** : That's a good question. It was extremely difficult. One of the main problems for the engineers was that over 500 kilometres on the line is built on **permanently frozen ground**. This includes a tunnel which is 1,338 metres long. To make this tunnel they had to cut through frozen earth. The line also includes 675 bridges. **In all**, 20, 000 people worked on the line.
- Rami** : Thanks. That's incredible!
- Presenter** : Our last caller is Magdi from Suez. What would you like to know, Magdi?
- Magdi** : Good morning. I'd like to know about travelling on this railway. Where does it start and end?
- Mr Chen** : Well, Magdi, the line starts in Xining in Cina and ends in Lhasa, the capital of Tibet. Trains run every day to Lhasa. **Altogether**, there are 45 stations. Passengers are carried at 120 kilometres an hour by trains specially built for high altitudes.
- Rami** : Thanks very much.
- Presenter** : OK, that's all we have time for today. Thanks to all those who called us and a special thanks to our expert, Michael Chen.



**READING****The Suez Canal****READING**

For thousands of years, people had wanted to link the Mediterranean Sea and The Red Sea to **shorten** the sea journey from the west to the east. The first canal was built in **around** 1300 BCE, but it was not taken care of and it was not used after the eighth century.

In **1858**, a French engineer called Ferdinand de Lesseps and the Egyptian government started work on a new canal. When the 164 kilometre- long canal was opened in 1869, it had cost \$ 100,000. At first, the Universal Sues Ship Canal Company operated the canal. The company **was given the right to** operate the canal for 99 years.

**World business** was immediately **affected** by the opening of the canal. Things were moved by ship much faster than before, when the ships had to sail around Africa. The journey from Europe to Asia **was shortened** by 9, 500 kilometres and by 20 days.

**The Suez Canal** is one of the world's most important waterways. It was taken over by Egypt in 1956, and is now used by about 50 ships every day. In most places, the canal is only wide enough for one ship, but there are **passing** places which means that ships can travel in both directions at the same time. Each ship takes between 11 and 16 hours to **pass through** the canal. The canal is now operated by the Suez Canal Authority and ships are charged to use the **waterway**. This money is important **income** for Egypt.

A **new 35- kilometer section** of the canal was opened in 2015. It was built to help modern ships, which are much bigger than in the past.

**QUESTIONS & ANSWERS**

**1- Why had people wanted to link the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea?**

- To shorten the sea journey from the west to the east.

**2- When was the first canal built?**

- It was built around 1300 BCE..

**3- Who was Ferdinand de Lesseps?**

- He was a French engineer who started work on the Suez Canal.

**4- How long is the Suez Canal?**

- It is 164 kilometres long.

**5- When was the Suez Canal opened?**

- It was opened in 1869.

**6- For how long was the right given to the Universal Company to operate the canal?**

- For 99 years.



**7- How was world business affected by the opening of the Suez Canal?**

- Things were moved by ship much faster than before. Besides, the journey from Europe to Asia was shortened by 9,500 kilometres and by 20 days.

**8- When was the Suez Canal taken over by the Egypt ( the nationalization of the Suez Canal)?**

- In 1956.

**9- How many ships use the Suez Canal every day?**

- About 50 ships.

**10- How much time does a ship take to pass through the canal?**

- Between 11 and 16 hours.

**11- By whom is the Suez Canal operated now?**

- It is operated by the Suez Canal Authority.

**12- What should ships do to pass through the canal?**

- Ships are charged to use the canal. \ They should pay.

**13- Why was a 35-kilometre section opened \ built in 2015?**

- To help modern ships, which are much bigger than in the past.

**14- Do you think that it is necessary to shorten the journey from Europe to Asia? Why? Why not?**

- Yes because kinds of goods such as fruit and vegetables can be damaged if the journey is long.

**15- In your point of view, what is the main function of the Suez Canal?**

- The main function of the Suez Canal is to link the west to the east.

**16- Why do you think the Suez Canal is one of the most important waterways?**

- Because it has shortened the distance between the west and the west.

**17- In your opinion, what benefits can the new section of the Suez Canal achieve?**

- The new section of the Suez Canal allow bigger ships to pass through it.

**16 - Name some of works of engineering throughout the world?**

- Burj Khalifa in Dubai, the Aswan High Dam in Egypt and the Eiffel tower in Paris.



# ★ Grammar ★

## The Passive

### Active and Passive المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول

لتحويل جملة من معلوم الى مجهول نتبع الاتي :

ريف الثالث للفعل.

to be

3- نضع الفاعل في نهاية الجملة مسبقا بكلمة by

Subject + verb + object ( Active )

Object + to be + P.P + by + subject ( Passive )

Ex: Ali wrote a letter yesterday. ( A letter )

A letter was written by Ali yesterday.

وقبل ان ندرس تصريف فعل to be في الازمنة المختلفة اليك الاتي :

### Verb t be

infinitive	Present simple	Past simple	P.P	V-ing
<b>be</b>	<b>am, is ,are</b>	<b>was, were</b>	<b>been</b>	<b>being</b>

واليك الان تصريف فعل to be في الازمنة المختلفة

Tense	Active	Passive
Present simple	فعل في المصدر او مضافا له S	<i>am, is, are + P.P</i>
Past simple	التصريف الثاني للفعل	<i>was, were + P.P</i>
Present cont.	<i>am, is, are + v-ing</i>	<i>am, is, are + being + P.P</i>
Past cont.	<i>was, were + v-ing</i>	<i>was, were + being + P.P</i>
Present perfect	<i>have , has + P.P</i>	<i>have , has + been + P.P</i>
Past perfect	<i>had + P.P</i>	<i>had + been + P.P</i>
Future simple	<i>will + inf.</i>	<i>will + be + P.P.</i>
Modal verbs	<i>Can, may</i> <i>Must, shall + inf.</i> <i>Should, could</i>	<i>Can, may</i> <i>Must, shall + be + P.P</i> <i>Should, could</i>

Ex: You must do your homework. ( Your homework )

Ex: Soha has ironed the shirts. ( The Shirts )

Ex: Adel is playing football now. ( Football )

Ex: Asala will buy a car tomorrow. ( Change into passive )



## ملاحظات هامة على المبنى للمجهول

- 1- اذا كانت الجملة منفية بـ **don't / doesn't** احذفها واستخدم  
**Object + am , is , are + not + P.P**  
*Ex: He doesn't speak English. ( English )*
- 2- منفية بـ **didn't** احذفها واستخدم  
**Object + was, were + not + P.P**  
*Ex: They didn't see the film. ( The film )*
- 3- **no one nobody** يلى الى مبنى للمجهول نحذفه ويحول  
*Ex: Nobody answered the question. ( The question )*
- 4- الافعال التى ياتى ورائها مصدر بدون **to**  
**see - hear - let - make..... + inf. ....**  
فانه عند التحويل الى مبنى للمجهول ياتى ورائها **to + inf.** ويحول الفعل **allowed**  
*Ex: He made us do it again. ( We.... )*
- 5- يمكن استخدام الفعل **get** عند التحويل للمجهول مع بعض الافعال مثل:  
**Delay, divorce, marry, dress, confuse, stick, hurt, catch, annoy, kill, arrest**  
*Ex: The police arrested the thief. ( got )*  
*Ex: He divorced her. ( got )*
- 6- عند تحويل الجملة ذات المفعولين من معلوم الى مجهول فانه:  
( عند البدء بالمفعول الثانى الغير عاقل فننضع **to** **for** )  
*Ex: We bought Mai a present. ( Mai )*  
*Ex: We bought Mai a present. ( A present )*
- 7- عند تحويل سؤال من معلوم الى مجهول فاننا :  
( نجيب على السؤال بجملة كاملة  
( نحول الاجابة الى مبنى للمجهول.  
(  
( تحول اداة الاستفهام **who** **By whom** )  
*Ex: Who built the pyramids? ( By whom )*
- 8- عند تحويل جملة تحتوى على احد الافعال الاتية من معلوم الى مجهول :  
**Say, believe, consider, think, allege, expect, hope, deny, claim, suggest.**  
**اولا :** **It** فاننا نحول فعل الجملة الاولى للمجهول وتظل الجملة الثانية كما هى.  
*Ex: People say Mai is beautiful. ( It..... )*  
*Ex: We hope Egypt will win the cup. ( It ..... )*



**ثانيا : عند البدء بفاعل الجملة الثانية فانه:**

to للمجهول

- اذا كانت الجملة الثانية مضارع او مستقبل فاننا  
من فعل الجملة الثانية .

*Ex: People say Mai is beautiful. ( Mai.... )*

*Ex: We hope Egypt will win the cup. ( Egypt..... )*

- اما اذا كانت الجملة الثانية ماضى فاننا نحول فعل الجملة الاولى للمجهول ثم **to have** والتصريف  
ن فعل الجملة الثانية.

*Ex: A reporter reported a man was killed. ( A man ..... )*

9- هناك بعض الاعمال يقوم الاخرون عادة بعملها لنا مثل اصلاح السيارة او الحلاقة.....

*Ex: The mechanic will repair my car.*

ولتحويل هذه الجملة من معلوم الى مجهول فاننا نبدأ بالشخص الذى يملك هذا الشيء ثم فعل **to have**  
فى زمن الجملة ثم الشيء ثم التصريف الثالث من الفعل الاصلى.

*Ex: The mechanic will repair my car. ( I )*

*I will have my car repaired.*

وتسمى هذه القاعدة بالسببية ( **causative** )

10- الافعال التى ياتى ورائها **V- ing** فى المبنى للمعلوم ياتى ورائها **being + P.P** فى المبنى للمجهول

*Ex: I don't like people laughing at me → I don't like being laughed at.*

11- الافعال التى ياتى ورائها **to + Inf.** فى المبنى للمعلوم ياتى ورائها **to be + P.P** فى المبنى للمجهول

*Ex: I want you to tell me the truth. → I want to be told the truth.*

12- الجملة الأمرية المثبتة تحول إلى ( **s + must / should + be + p.p** )

والجملة الأمرية المنفية تحول إلى ( **s + mustn't / shouldn't + be + p.p** )

- *Switch off the lights. ( The )*

- *Don't switch off the lights. ( The )*

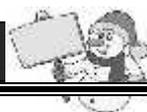
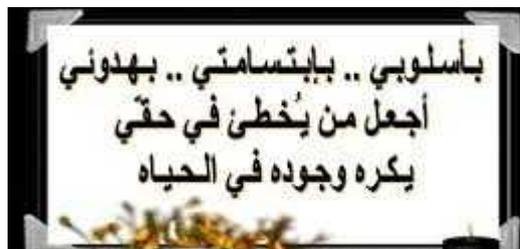
13- ( التى لا ياتى بعدها مفعول ) لا تبني للمجهول والافعال اللازمة مثل:

**Rise, happen, come out, arrive, die...etc.**

- *An accident happened in our street yesterday.*

- *His first novel came out when he was thirty.*

- وبالطبع أعكس الخطوات السابقة للتحويل من المجهول للمعلوم.



# Homework



## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

**Teacher** : Where is the High Dam?

**Enas** : (1).....

**Teacher** : .....(2)?

**Enas** : It was built between 1960 and 1970.

**Teacher** : .....(3)?

**Enas** : It protects Egypt from floods and provides it with electricity.

**Teacher** : How can we solve the problem of water?

**Enas** : (4).....

## 2) Write that you would say in each of the following situations :

1- You ask your teacher's advice about how to improve your English.

2- Your friend asks you what he should do to lose weight.

3- Your teacher asks you why the Suez canal was built.

4- Your friend looks pale. Advise him.

## 3) Choose the correct answer :

1- What (**altitude - attitude - applaud - download**) does the plane fly at?

2- The playground (**used - is used - use - is using**) by all the children in the school.

3- The house was built (**of - to - with - by**) Hala's father.

4- The dress is too long, so please can you (**express - advise - travel - shorten**) it.

5- At what time does the plane take (**up - on - off - of**) ?

6- Passengers (**carried - carry - are carry - are carried**) at an altitude of 5,000 metres

7- Do you think the character in this story (**based - is basing - has based - was based**) on a real person?

8- Please don't take my plate (**away - off - over - up**), I haven't finished eating yet.

9- Please take your shoes (**of - off - over - care**) before you enter the flat.

10- Things were moved by ship (**many - much - more - less**) faster than before.

11- The journey from Europe to Asia was (**short - shorten - shortened - shortness**) by 9,500 kilometres.

12- A new 35-kilometre (**sect - section - sector - session**) of the canal was opened in 2015.

13- A canal is a kind of (**motorways - railways - waterways - highways**).

14- To take something (**up - care - out - over**) means to win control.

15- The money you earn is your (**come - outcome - income - outlet**).

16- The first Suez Canal was built in the (**nineteen - nine - ninety - nineteenth**) century.

17- Ships have to (**pay - buy - cost - sell**) to use the canal.

18- The Universal Suez Ship Canal Company (**gave - was given - was giving - given**) the right to operate the canal for 99 years.

19- There are (**pass - passed - passing - passes**) places in the canal which enables ships to travel in both directions.

20- People had wanted to (**lick - tie - attach - link**) the Mediterranean Sea and the Red Sea.

21- World business was affected by the (**opening - open - opened - opens**) of the Suez Canal.

22- The USSCC was given the (**write - bright - Wright - right**) to operate the canal for 99 years.

23- Each ship takes between 11 and 16 hours to pass (**to - on - through - from**) the canal.

24- The first Suez Canal was built in around 1300 (**BCC - BBC - BCE - BAC**).

25- Egypt (**visits - visited - is visited - visit**) by millions of tourists every year.

26- The pyramids (**built - will be built - was built - were built**) by ancient Egyptians.

27- Football (**played - is playing - is played - plays**) everywhere.

28- Dickens stories (**read - are reading - have been read - have been reading**) by millions of people.



- 29- The letter ( **wasn't written - hasn't written - isn't written - hasn't been written** ) yet .
- 30- A new film ( **made - will make - is being made - making** ) by a British company .
- 31- The children ( **had told - had been told - has been told - was telling** ) some stories before they slept .
- 32- After the car ( **has been repaired - repaired - had repaired - had been repaired** ), we drove away .
- 33- Hundreds of crimes ( **solved - solve - have solved - were solved** ) by Holmes .
- 34- Sooner or later the thief ( **will be - has been - is - will have** ) arrested .
- 35- Where has the money ( **hidden - hide - been hidden - hiding** ) ?
- 36- Don't worry, any problem ( **can solve - can be solved - will solve - solve** ) .
- 37- Ali ( **didn't see - wasn't seen - hasn't seen - won't be seen** ) at the party yesterday .
- 25- He has been ill ( **since - for - ago - when** ) yesterday .
- 26- The train has ( **already - yet - still - ever** ) left the station .
- 27- Have they gone to bed ( **still - already - yet - just** ) ?
- 28- It is three weeks since we ( **meet - have met - met - had met** ) .
- 29- The child ( **have slept - is sleeping - has slept - sleep** ) for ten hours .
- 30- I have heard a lot since I ( **have started - started - start - had started** ) coming to this school .
- 31- I ( **work - had worked - have worked - am working** ) hard since I was twenty .
- 32- Where ( **were you - have you been - had you been - will you be** ) since the bell rang ?
- 33- Nothing interesting ( **happened - had happened - has happened - happens** ) since I last saw him .
- 34- I feel like a fish ( **in - up - out - at** ) of water when I travel abroad .
- 35- I've felt at ( **house - home - homeless - building** ) because everyone is so friendly .
- 36- I think that children with ( **disabilities - talks - lives - types** ) should go to special schools
- 37- " ( **Massive - Tiny - Terrible - Passive** ) " means very big .
- 38- This tea is ( **good - tasty - terrible - nice** ) . I can't drink it .
- 39- It didn't take him long time ( **getting - to get - get - to getting** ) to work in the city . .
- 40- The city she lives is the same ( **weight - size - age - height** ) as Cairo .
- 41- I have known him ( **for - since - already - just** ) we joined the university .
- 42- The writer ( **has finished - didn't finish - isn't finished - hasn't finished** ) his book yet .
- 43- She ( **has left - left - is leaving - will leave** ) for work an hour ago .
- 44- They ( **has been - have gone - have been - going** ) to the USA. They are in Cairo now .
- 45- Dalia has practiced her hobby ( **since - for - recently - ago** ) a long time .
- 46- About 40 ( **percentage - percent - proportion - relativity** ) of employees are women .
- 47- ( **Cross - Across - Pros - Actress** ) the world, about 180,000 people move to cities every day .
- 48- It's the most interesting book I ( **had read - have ever read - have never read - was reading** ) .
- 49- Noha ( **will go - went - has gone - is going** ) swimming, she hasn't come back yet
- 50- I haven't visited my uncle ( **for - since - ago - in** ) the last month .
- 51- A ( **Sensor - Sonar - Sense - Census** ) is a questionnaire in which all people of a country are asked questions about their lives .

#### 4) Rewrite :

- 1- You can make the journey shorter by taking the road across the desert. ( **shorten** )
- 2- They are very kind. They give half the money they earn to a charity. ( **income** )
- 3- Her grandmother looks after her younger sisters when her parents are at work. ( **take care of** )
- 4- Please can you remove these boxes from my room. ( **take away** )
- 5- A French engineer started the Suez Canal. ( **by** )
- 6- I always do my homework before I watch TV. ( **My homework is....** )
- 7- Egypt took over the Suez Canal in 1956. ( **taken** )



- 8- You shouldn't neglect your work. (take care)
- 9- The opening of the Suez Canal has affected world business. (effect)
- 10- Every year, hundreds of tourists visit the Aswan High Dam. (The Aswan High Dam.....)
- 11- Ships have to pay to use the canal. (charge)
- 12- The canal cut the length of a journey from the west to the east by two weeks. (shorten)

**5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

- 1- What attitude does the plane fly at?
- 2- How often do the buses bun to the centre of the town from here?
- 3- Take a good soppo of water when you go to the desert.
- 4- It is difficult to build a bridge quickly, so engineers usually build it in steps.
- 5- Six millions pounds is not a small sum of money.
- 6- The Egyptians have the author to operate the Suez Canal.
- 7- Tourism is the main source of national come.
- 8- Egypt is full of many amazing work of engineering.
- 9- The Suez Canal has shrunk the sea journey from the west to the east.
- 10- The Suez Channel was opened in 1869.
- 11- Ships are recharged to use the Suez Canal.
- 12- There are passed places which allows ships to travel in both directions.
- 13- The Suez Canal was taken out by Egypt in 1956.
- 14- Can I ask your device?
- 15- My father works like a science teacher in a secondary school.
- 16- The first Suez Canal was built round 1300 BCE.
- 17- The Great wool of China was built 2,000 years ago.
- 18- The lighthouse of Alexandria is a kind of lamps.
- 19- The Universal Suez Ship Company was given the write to operate the canal for 99 years.
- 20- The journey from Europe to Asia was shortened to 9,500 kilometres.
- 21- The first canal was not taken away and it was not used after the 18<sup>th</sup> century.
- 22- Thousand of men built the Great Wall of China.
- 23- Burj Khalifa is the longest building in the world now.
- 24- My cousins want to take part on a course to learn photography.
- 25- An attitude is the height above the sea.
- 26- Our guest in the studio is a railway engineer expert.
- 27- Tibet railway line is over 4,000 metres up sea level.
- 28- All together, there are 45 stations in Tibet railway line.
- 29- What are the advantages for travelling by train?
- 30- Don't walk on a freezing ground with bare feet.
- 31- The air at altitudes is very thick.
- 32- The heart needs a consonant stubbly of oxygen.
- 33- The line has 675 bridges at all.

**6) Read the following passage, and then answer the questions :**

Dolphins are regarded as the friendliest creatures in the sea and stories of them helping drowning sailors have been common since Roman times. The more we learn about dolphins, the more we realize that their society is more complex than people previously imagined. They look after other dolphins when they are ill, care for **pregnant**



mothers and protect the weakest in the community, as we do. Some scientists have suggested that dolphins have a language but it is much more probable that they communicate with each other without needing words. Could any of these mammals be more intelligent than man? Certainly the most common argument in favor of man's superiority over them that we can kill them more easily than they can kill us is the least satisfactory. On the contrary, the more we discover about these remarkable creatures, the less we appear superior when we destroy them.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What kind of animals are Dolphins?
- 2- Why shouldn't Dolphins be killed?
- 3- How is the community of Dolphins complex\ amazing?
- 4- How do dolphins communicate with each other?

**B- Choose the right answer from a . b . c or d:**

- 4- People think that Dolphins are.....than us.
  - a) superior
  - b) inferior
  - c) better
  - d) worse
- 5- The word '**pregnant**' means.....
  - a) is going to have a baby
  - b) is going to die
  - c) is going to marry
  - d) is going to leave

### **E- Writing**

**9) Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) only of the following:**

- a) An amazing work of engineering in Egypt.
- b) The advantages and disadvantages of travelling by train.

### **F- Translation**

**10. A) Translate into Arabic :**

- 1- All Egyptians hope that the Suez Canal project will attract foreign investors.
- 2- The Suez Canal project will provide many job opportunities.

**B) Translate into English :**

.1970

-1



### **THE ADVANTAGES AND DISADVANTAGES OF TRAVELLING BY TRAIN.**

#### **مميزات وعيوب السفر بالقطار**

**In the following lines, I'm going to write about the advantages and disadvantages of travelling by train. Firstly** I would like to start with the advantages of travelling by trains. Travelling by train is more comfortable and safer than any other means of transport. Besides it is cheaper than travelling by air. **Secondly** I would shed the lights on the disadvantages of travelling by train. Travelling by train is boring as it is slow as it has a limited speed. Also trains can't go to certain places such as across the sea. **Finally** I would like to say that I myself like travelling by train as I find it amusing and enjoyable.





balloon	منطاد	international	دولى
space travel	سفر الفضاء	national	قومى
exploration	إستكشاف	journey	رحلة طويلة
explore	يستكشف	flight	رحلة جوية
explorer	مستكشف	voyage	رحلة بحرية
law	قانون	trip	رحلة قصيرة
lawyer	محامى	cruise	رحلة نيلية
realise	يدرك	charity	جمعية خيرية
science fiction	خيال علمى	charitable	خيرية
article	مقالة	teenager	مراهق
grandfather	جد	teenage	مراهقة
rockets	صواريخ	sunglass	مصاب
submarines	غواصات	lighthouse	منارة
argument	جدال	fortune	ثروة
earn money	يكسب قوتة / رزقة	fortunate	محظوظ
criminal	مجرم	unfortunate	غير محظوظ
reach	يصل الى	fortunately	لحسن الحظ
servant	خادم	unfortunately	لسوء الحظ
disagreement	عدم اتفاق	the Pacific ocean	المحيط الهادى
kidnap	يختطف (شخص)	improve	يحسن
hijack	يختطف (طائرة)	improvement	تحسن
rescue	ينقذ	injure	يصيب / يؤذى

## Definitions تعريفات

### 1 - argument جدال

- a disagreement between people.

### 2 - balloon منضاد / بالون

- a coloured rubber bag that is filled with air to use as a toy or decoration, or for transport.

### 3 - come out يظهر / يظهر

- to become available for people to buy.

### 4 - criminal مجرم

- A person who has done something bad or illegal.

### 5 - exploration إستكشاف

- travelling through an unfamiliar area to find out what it is like.

### 6 - lawyer محامى

- Someone whose job is to advise people about the law and speak for them in court.

### 7 - reach يصل الى

- arrive at/in a place, city, etc.



**8 - realise** يدرك

- notice something that you did not notice or understand before.

**9 - science fiction** خيال علمي

- books and stories about life in the future.

**10 -servant** خادم

- Someone who lives with and works for another one.

**حروف جر Prepositions**

look forward to	يتطلع الى	on the way	في الطريق
come out	يظهر	return to	يعود الى
purpose of	غرض.....	go round	يدور حول
on a journey	في رحلة	argue with	يجادل مع
get on	يركب (مواصلات)	the father of	رائد
get off	ينزل من	save....from	ينقذ من
come up	يصعد	live on....	يعيش على (مال)
arrive at	يصل الى	Pay for	يدفع مقابل
arrive in	يصل الى	Pay to	يدفع لـ / لى
know about	يعرف عن	hide....from	يخبيء.....عن
at the end of...	في نهاية....	hide on a ship	يختبيء على سفينة
in the end	في النهاية	grow up	ينمو/ يكبر
On time	في الموعد المحدد بالظبط	busy with	مكتظ بـ
In time	مبكرا عن الموعد المحدد	hurry to	يسرع لـ

**Examples:**

- It was said that he hid on a ship when he was young.
- Jules's first novel came out in 1873.
- Jules Verne was called the father of science fiction.
- Jules's father stopped paying for his son's studies.
- Nantes was always busy with ships coming and going.
- I argued with my friends about the match.
- Fog and Passepartout hurried to the club and arrived in time and won \$20,000.

**Expressions** تعبيرات

science fiction	earn money	/
coming and going	save a day	
miss a train, boat	save a person	
lose money	save file	

**Examples:**

- Jules Verne was called the father of science fiction.
- They saved a day and won the money.
- Nantes was always busy with ships coming and going.



## Language Notes

► **spend + period of time + V-ing**

► **It takes \ took + Obj. + time + to + Inf.**

Ex: He spent most of his time writing stories about fantastic journeys.

Ex: It takes Ahmed half an hour to answer the test.

► **at the end of.....**

..... فى نهاية

► **in the end,**

فى النهاية

Ex: Jules Verne's last novel was called The Lighthouse at the end of the world.

Ex: He looked a lot for a flat. In the end, he found a small one.

► **stop + V-ing**

يتوقف عن (يبتل / يخلص)

► **stop to + Inf.**

يتوقف لى.....

Ex: His father stopped paying for his son's studies.

Ex: I stopped to buy a magazine.

كل وسائل المواصلات تسبق بحرف الجر **by** اذا لم تسبق الوسيلة باى شىء

► **by car, by taxi, by train, by bus, by boat, by ship, by elephant, by plane, ... etc.**

ولكن اذا سبقت وسيلة المواصلات باداة او ضمير فان كلمتى car , taxi يسبقا بحرف الجر **in** وباقى الوسائل تسبق بـ **on**

► **in a \ the \ his car , taxi.**

► **on a \ the \ train, bus, plane, ship**

ولا تنسى اننا نستخدم **on** مع كلمة **foot**

► **on foot**

Examples:

- Mr. Mahrous goes to school by car.
- Mr. Mahrous goes to school on his car.
- Mr. Alaa goes to school on foot.

## Collocations

Catch -caught-caught	<b>catch</b> a thief, <b>catch</b> a cold/ flu, <b>catch</b> fish, <b>catch</b> a bus/ train, <b>catch</b> fire, <b>catch</b> up with, <b>catch</b> a ball, <b>catch</b> someone, <b>Catch-22</b>
miss -missed-missed	<b>miss</b> someone, <b>miss</b> a train\bus, <b>miss</b> the record, <b>miss</b> a chance, <b>miss</b> an opportunity , <b>miss</b> the point, <b>miss</b> a catch, <b>miss</b> a target, <b>miss</b> a lesson, <b>miss</b> something, <b>miss</b> a day, go <b>missing</b>
lose -lost-lost	<b>lose</b> a match, <b>lose</b> weight, <b>lose</b> a job, <b>lose</b> memory, <b>lose</b> balance, <b>lose</b> life, <b>lose</b> sight , <b>lose</b> things, <b>lose</b> to...., <b>lose</b> blood, <b>lose</b> control, <b>lose</b> temper, <b>lose</b> an arm, <b>lose</b> touch, <b>lose</b> money, <b>lose</b> a day, get <b>lost</b>

Examples:

- Fogg and his servant thought that they lost a day so lost the money.
- Fogg, Passepartout and Auda catch the train to New York.
- As they got to New York late, they missed their boat to Liverpool.
- I missed my friend Osama so much.
- The police caught the thief yesterday.
- You can't get a job without experience, and you can't get experience without a job. It's a Catch-22.





You probably don't know much about the writer Jules Verne, but you may have heard of two of his most famous novels: *Journey to the Centre of the Earth* and *Around the World in 80 Days*. Verne wrote stories about air travel, space travel and submarines before planes, rockets or submarines were used. This is why many people call Jules Verne the 'father of science fiction.'

Verne was born in 1828. He grew up in a port called Nantes in northern France. It was always busy with ships coming and going. This may be why Jules became interested in travel and exploration. There is a story that when he was very young, he wanted to travel much that he hid on a ship as it was leaving Nantes for America.

After he left school, Jules studied to be a lawyer, but spent a lot of his time writing stories about fantastic journeys. His father, who was also a lawyer, realized this, so he stopped paying for his son's studies and told him to find a job. His first story, which was called *Five Weeks in a Balloon*, came out in 1863. After that, he wrote two books every year and earned enough money to live on his writing. His most well-known book, that he wrote in 1873, was *Around the World in 80 Days*. It first came out in a magazine. In 1905, Jules Verne became ill and died. His last novel came out after his death. It was called *The Lighthouse at the End of the World*.

## READING

### *Around the World in 80 Days*

The story begins in London club on October 2, 1872. Phileas Fogg, a rich man, has an argument with a friend about how long it would take him to travel around the world. Fogg's friend does not believe that Fogg can finish the journey in 80 days. If he succeeds, Fogg will win £20,000.

Fogg leaves London, with his servant Passepartout, at 8.45 pm on October 2. They will have to return at the same time on December 21. After seven days, they reach Suez, where they meet a man called Fix. Fix is a policeman who thinks that Fogg is the criminal he is looking for. The three men travel to Bombay by ship, then to Calcutta by train. Unfortunately, the railway line is not finished and they need to travel part of the way by elephant. On their journey, they save a young woman from death. She is called Aouda and she goes with them on their journey. From Calcutta, they travel by ship to Hong Kong, then across the Pacific to San Francisco.

In San Francisco, Fogg, Passepartout, Fix and Aouda catch the train to New York, but during this journey Passepartout is kidnapped. Fogg rescues his servant, but they get to New York late and miss their boat to Liverpool. After fuel problems, the next boat finally reaches Britain.

As soon as they arrive, Fix arrests Fogg. He quickly realizes that Fogg is not the real criminal, but by now they have missed their train to London, lost a day and so lost the money. However, Passepartout discovers that it is December 20, not December 21. Because they had travelled east, they had crossed the International Date Line and saved a day! Fogg and Passepartout hurry to the club and arrive in time to win the £20,000.



## QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

**13- When and where does the story begin?**

The story begins in a London club on October 2, 1872.

**14- What is the argument Phileas Fogg has about?**

It is about how long it would take him to travel round the world.

**15- What doesn't Fogg's friend believe?**

He doesn't believe Fogg can finish the journey in 80 days.

**16- What will Fogg win if he succeeds?**

He will win £ 20,000.

**17- With whom does Fogg leave London?**

With his servant Passepartout.

**18- When does Fogg leave London?**

At 8.45 pm on October 2.

**18- When will Fogg have to return to London?**

At 8.45 pm on December 21.

**19- Who do Fogg and Passepartout meet in Suez?**

They meet a man called Fix.

**20- What does Fix think ?**

Fix is a policeman who thinks that Fogg is the criminal he is looking for.

**21- How do they travel to Bombay?**

They travel to Bombay by ship.

**22- How do they travel to Calcutta?**

By train.

**23- Why do they need to travel part of the way by elephant ?**

Because the railway line is not finished yet.

**24- What do they do on their journey ?**

They save a young woman from death. She is called Aouda.

**25- What happens to passé partout during the journey ?**

During the journey, passepartout is kidnapped.

**26- What does Fogg do when Passepartout is kidnapped ?**

Fogg rescues his servant.

**27- Why does Fix arrest Fogg ? What does he realize ?**

He thinks him a criminal. He realizes that he is not the real criminal.

**28- How do they save a day ( reach in time ) ?**

Because they had traveled east, they had crossed the International Date Line and saved a day.

**29- Why do you think Fogg has the time to spend travelling for 80 days?**

Because he is rich.

**30- Where does Fogg begin and end his journey in Around the World in Eighty Days?**

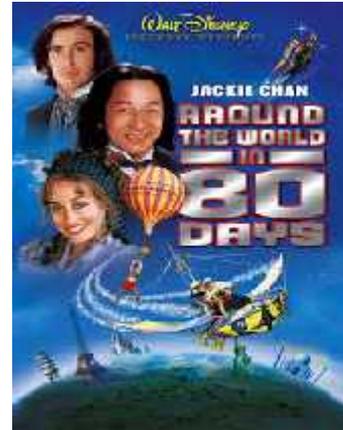
He begins and ends it in London.

**31- How does Passepartout show he is a faithful servant?**

He refuses to help Mr. Fix catch Fogg.

**32- How does Fogg show that he is a good master?**

When Passepartout was kidnapped, he rescued him.



# Grammar

## Relative Clauses ضمائر الوصل

ضمائر الوصل هي الضمائر التي تستخدم لربط جملتين وضمائر الوصل هي: who, whom, which, that, whose, where, when

### Who

- ضمير وصل بمعنى الذي / التي يمل عمل الفاعل / المفعول العاقل ويتبعه فعل او فاعل

Ex: Dickens was the writer who wrote Oliver Twist .

Ex: Armstrong was the first man who walked on the moon .

**S. + who + S.+V \ V.+ obj.**

لاحظ انه يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل اذا حل محل مفعول به.

### Whom

- ضمير وصل يمل عمل المفعول العاقل فقط ويتبعه فاعل وفعل ويمكن ان ياتي قبله حرف جر ويمكن حذفه -

Ex: The person whom I enjoy listening to is my grandmother.

♥ **S. + whom + S.** ♥ **S. + prep. \whom + S.**

### Which

- تحل عمل الفاعل أو المفعول الغير عاقل :

- The book about Dickens, which / that my friend gave me, is very interesting.

- The sunglasses which / that I bought last week were not expensive.

ملاحظة هامة يمكن استخدام ( that ) بدلا من who/ which / whom ولكن لا تستخدم that

بعد حروف الجر او الفاصلة comma

ولكن يوجد بعض الحالات التي يجب ان نستخدم فيها (that) وليست who\ which\whom

1 - اذا جاء في الجملة اي من الكلمات الاتية:

**All, any, one, some, everything, only, many, much, few**

Ex: I gave him all news that I had.

Ex: Ahmad is the only pupil that got the full mark.

2 - مع الدرجة الثالثة من المقارنة ( صيغة التفضيل )

Ex: Samy is the tallest man that I have ever seen.

3 - اذا جاء في الجملة عاقل وغير عاقل

Ex: Ali wrote about the men and the books that he liked.

4 - وتستخدم that مع هذين التعبيرين:

**What really ----- is / was that-----**

**The thing that----- is / was that-----**

Ex: What really annoys his teacher is that he comes late.

Ex: The thing that annoys his teacher is that he comes late.





- تحل محل الملكية للعاقل وغير العاقل ويتبعها اسم ولا يأتي بعدها فعل. والملكية يمكن ان تكون:

**Noun + 's + noun**

**My – his – her – its – our – your – their**

Ex: This is **the man whose son** won the prize .

Ex: The **villa whose door** is green is mine.

**S. + whose +**

S. + V. + who has \have.....= S. + V. + whose.....

S. + V. + with.....= S. + V. + whose.....

Ex: The girl **with the blue eyes** is my friend. ( **whose** )( **who** )



- تحل محل المكان ومعناها حيث ولا يأتي قبلها او بعدها حرف جر ولا يأتي بعدها فعل

Ex: This is the house **where** we live.

Ex: A school is the place **where** we learn

حظة هامة: ( لا يأتي حرف جر مع **where** ) ( **which** )

**where = in which / at which**

Ex: This is the house **where** we live.

Ex: This is the house **in which** we live.

Ex: This is the house **which** we live **in**.



- تحل محل الوقت أو الزمن ولا يأتي قبلها او بعدها حرف جر ولا يأتي بعدها فعل

Ex: Ramadan is the month **when** we fast.

Ex: Friday is the day **when** we don't go to school.

ملاحظة هامة: ( لا يأتي حرف جر مع **when** ) ( **which** )

**when = in / on / at which**

Ex: February is the month **when** he was born.

Ex: February is the month **in which** he was born.

Ex: February is the month **which** he was born **in**.

### ملاحظات هامة على ضمائر الوصل:

(1) يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل **who \ which** والفعل ونستخدم **V-ing** بدلا منهم وتسمى هذه القاعدة

بإسمر الفاعل. ( لا يأتي فعل به **ing** بعد ضمير الوصل **who** )

**.....who \ which + Verb = .....V-ing.....**

Ex: This is the boy **who won the medal.** = This is the boy **winning the medal.**

(2) يمكن حذف ضمير الوصل **who \ which** وفعل **to be** في حالة المبني للمجهول ونستخدم بدلا

منهم التصريف الثالث للفعل وتسمى هذه القاعدة بإسمر المفعول. ( لا يأتي فعل به **ing** بعد ضمير الوصل **whom** )

**.....+ who \ which + was \ were + P.P = .....P.P.....**

Ex: Plays **that were written** by Shakespeare are read everywhere.

Plays **written** by Shakespeare are read everywhere.



(3) يأتي حرف الجر فقط أمام **which \ whom\whose**

Ex: The house **in which** I live is very large.

Ex: The man **about whom** we were talking is a doctor.

Ex: Enas **in whose** car we travelled is a good girl.

(4) يمكن أن نستخدم **who \ that** بعد التعبير الآتي.

**It is \ was.....who \ that.....** انه .....

Ex: It is Mr Mahrous that \ who taught me English.

(5) لاحظ الفرق بين **whose \ who's**

..... whose  
.....who's + V-ing \ P.P\noun.....

(6) هناك بعض الكلمات تستخدم كأسم وفعل فإذا استخدمت كأسم فإنها تسبق بـ **whose** :

**name, stay, dream, like, play, use, water, plant...etc.**

Ex: People **whose likes** and dislikes are the same are good friends.

Ex: People **whose stay** ended should renew it.

(7) يمكن أن نستخدم **what** كضمير وصل:

Ex: A black jacket was what I bought.

Ex: What I bought was a black jacket.

(8) الأسماء التي تشير إلى جموع مثل team, family, company.....etc. عندما نفكر فيها كمجموعة (ككل) فإن

الضمير الذي يحل محلها هو **it** وبالتالي فإن ضمير الوصل الذي يحل محلها هو **which \ that** أما لو فكرنا فيها

كأفراد فإن الضمير الذي يعود عليها هو **they** وبالتالي فإن ضمير الوصل الذي يحل محلها هو **who \ that**.

Ex: Professor Yacoub was part of the team which did the first heart transplant.

(9) هناك بعض الكلمات يمكن أن تشير إلى مكان ويتبعها **where** (هنا يحل محل الكلمة في الجملة الثانية

**here\there** وأحيانا أخرى تشير إلى مبنى أو كتلة وتتبع **which** (هنا يحل محلها **it**)

Ex: This is the house **where** I live

Ex: This is the house **which** my father built.

Ex: Assiut **where** I live is a big town.

Ex: Assiut **which** is located in middle Egypt is so big.

**ولربط أي جملتين بضمير وصل مناسب إتبع الآتي:**

(1) حدد المكرر في الجملتين ثم قم بحذف المكرر الثاني.

(2) مهما إن كان مكان المكرر الثاني المحذوف ضع ضمير الوصل في أول الجملة الثانية.

(3) ضمير الوصل وما بعده يسمى جملة وصفية لذا فهو يتبع الموصوف.

Ex: Defoe wrote Robinson Crusoe. He was the father of seven children. ( who )

Ex: I go to school. I have lots of friends there. ( where )

إذا أعطى لنا جملة واحدة وطلب مني استخدام ضمير وصل فإننا نستخدم ضمير الوصل المنذ

**It is \ was.....who \ which \ that + V. ....**

Ex: Mai won the prize. ( who )

Ex: Families and friends spend a good time at the club. ( where )

Ex: My birthplace was Assiut. ( where )



# Homework



## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

- Samir: (1).....?
- Rami : Around the world in Eighty Days? It was by Jules Verne, isn't it?
- Samir: (2).....?
- Rami : In 1872 I think.
- Warda: (3).....?
- Reem : A man who tries to travel round the world to win some money.
- Warda: (4).....?
- Reem : I will. I'm going to start reading it this weekend.

## 2) Write that you would say in each of the following situations :

- 1- You think that something your friend has just said is wrong.
- 2- Your friend asks you you think of fictional stories.
- 3- You visit your friend who is very ill in hospital.
- 4- Your friend asks you what a servant is.

## 3) Choose the correct answer :

- 1- Most ( **science - science fiction - science fraction - science experiments** ) books tell stories about life in the future .
- 2- I've just ( **risen - real - realised - missed** ) that I don't have to go to school today .
- 3- When the man was arrested, He wanted his ( **layer - secretary - officer - lawyer** ) to represent him in the court
- 4- He made a voyage of ( **exploration - explosion - exposure - exploitation** ) to South America .
- 5- Hemingway's novel " A farewell to Arms " came ( **into - out - off - at** ) in 1929 .
- 6- The earliest type of air travel was the hot air ( **ball - balloon - aircraft - helicopter** )
- 7- Millions of people are waiting for the new book to ( **come up - come out - come down - come at** ).
- 8- A kind of air travel which uses hot air is ( **plane - balloon- bicycle - train** )
- 9- On a journey of ( **explanation - exploration - expectation - exception** ), people discover new places .
- 10- To ( **understand - repeat - learn - realise** ) means to know something suddenly .
- 11- A ( **lower - lawyer - layer - liar** ) is a person who speaks for people who have been arrested .
- 12- They've built a new school next to the house ( **which - who - when - where** ) I grow up .
- 13- They've built a new school next to the house in ( **which - who - when - where** ) I grow up
- 14- Last year, I visited Alexandria, the city ( **when - where - who - which** ) Gamal Abdel Nasser was born .
- 15- ( **During - While - When - Whose** ) the journey from San Francisco to New York, Passe- partout was kidnapped .
- 16- ( **In - On - At - Of** ) their journey through India, they rescued a young woman .
- 17- The ( **port - part - street - road** ) was busy with ships coming and going
- 18- He is interested ( **of - at - in - on** ) stories of exploration .
- 19- He went to the USA to collect money for ( **cheer - chair - charity - change** ) for the orphans
- 20- She got up late, so she ( **caught - missed - held - stopped** ) the train .
- 21- His son was ( **kidnapped - shaved - rewarded - wrecked** ) by some criminals .
- 22- He came late, so he could not ( **miss - catch - pick - reap** ) the train .
- 23- The railway ( **beach - coast - shore - line** ) was not finished, so they rode horses .
- 24- A ( **gang - servant - lawyer - criminal** ) is someone who has done something wrong .
- 25- I've just ( **realised - relaxed - known - reached** ) that I forgot my wallet at home
- 26- You'll have to ( **pay - cost - buy - price** ) more if you fly business class .
- 27- If we ( **catch - leave - miss - lose** ) the bus at 2.30 we can get the next one at 3 o'clock .
- 28- This is the bedroom ( **where - which - when - there** ) I sleep, use my computer and do my homework .



- 29- The Old Man and the Sea, ( **who - whose - where - which** ) was written by Hemingway, is about an old fisherman .
- 30- I read the newspaper ( **who - whose - where - that** ) was on the table .
- 31- Luxor was the city ( **which - who - where - that** ) they stayed .
- 32- Verne was a good writer, He ( **earned - gained - won - lost** ) enough money to live on his writing .
- 33- My parents talk loudly and angrily. They have an ( **argue - disagreement - agreement - argument** ) about family budget .
- 34- Verne grew ( **up - down - in - at** ) in a port called Nantes in France .
- 35- ( **Boats - Ships - Submarines - Trains** ) go under the surface of water .
- 36- The firemen ( **killed - hit - rescued - beat** ) two women from the fire .
- 37- Throw the ball to Ahmed and see if he can ( **lose - miss - win - catch** ) it .
- 38- Unfortunately, I ( **caught - missed - stopped - broke** ) the train to London .
- 39- I really ( **caught - won - missed - lost** ) my brother Mahmoud so much especially after he'd left for Saudi Arabia .
- 40- I hardly recognised her as she has ( **caught - missed - earned - lost** ) weight .
- 41- Our team ( **missed - won - caught - earned** ) the race by 3 points .
- 42- The waitress ( **where - that - which - who** ) served us was very impolite and impatient
- 43- He has written several ( **books - notes - articles - words** ) in Al-Ahram .
- 44- Many people have been ( **infected - caused - faced - formed** ) with bird flu .
- 45- If you are very weak, it is easy to ( **miss - catch - infect - hunt** ) disease .
- 46- We went to Aswan ( **with - in - on - by** ) my father's car .
- 47- We saw the sun come ( **at - on - up - in** ) at the beginning of a very hot day .
- 48- Aswan was the town ( **which - where - who - when** ) we visited .
- 49- Aswan was the town ( **which - where - who - when** ) we stayed .
- 50- Try to ( **invest - invent - invite - avoid** ) driving in the rush-hour .
- 51- ( **Fortunately - Unfortunately - Luckily - Ungratefully** ), I missed the end of the film on TV yesterday .

**D) Rewrite :**

- 1- My illness began at Leila's birthday party . (catch)  
.....
- 2- My taxi had to wait in a traffic jam, so I didn't catch my train . (miss)  
.....
- 3- To run in the race, I must be less heavy . (lose)  
.....
- 4- My football team didn't win their match at the weekend . (lose)  
.....
- 5- My family are on holiday. I wish I could see them . (miss)  
.....
- 6- Everyone at school has flu. I hope I am not infected . (catch)  
.....
- 7- Unfortunately, we missed our bus because we were late . (catch)  
.....
- 8- When the man saw the accident, he called the police . (who)  
.....
- 9- The man was angry because his car was stolen . (whose)  
.....
- 10- We greeted the athlete as the president gave him the gold medal . (who)  
.....



- 11- I attended a meeting yesterday. It was in Aswan . (which)
- .....
- 12- Mr. Smith teaches us English and he is from London. (who)
- .....
- 13- I went to the hospital because my father was treated in it . (where)
- .....
- 14- Dr Rami performed the operation . (It)
- .....
- 15- The man in a black suit is waiting for you . (who) (whose)
- .....
- .....
- 16- The meeting was held at the hotel . (The hotel)
- .....
- 17- Charles Dickens is a famous English writer. He was born in 1812. (who)
- .....

**5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

- 1- Yesterday, I watched a science faction film.
- 2- Millions of people are waiting for the new book to become out.
- 3- A liar is a person who speaks for a person in law courts.
- 4- If you release something, you suddenly know it.
- 5- A hot air pollen can be used to travel to far places.
- 6- Al Zamalik missed the last match against Al Ahly.
- 7- If I lived in another country, I would lose my friends very much.
- 8- It is easy to miss your way in big cities.
- 9- Could you tell me what the propose of the journey was?
- 10- Jules’s last novel came out after his dead.
- 11- If Fogg succeeds in his challenge, he will beat 20,000 pounds.
- 12- Jules verne was called the mother of science fiction.
- 13- I had an armament with my friends about the last match.
- 14- A soldier is a person who lives with and works for another one.
- 15- A criminal is a person who has done something bad or legal.

**6) Read the following passage, and then answer the questions :**

Once Wealth and Poverty approached a merchant and introduced themselves as visitors. The merchant offered his salutatio to both of them and said: “May I know what brings you to my humble shop?” Wealth said: “We want you to judge and tell us who is more beautiful between us two?” The merchant was in a fix. If he were to declare wealth more beautiful than poverty, poverty would curse him. If he were to declare poverty as more beautiful than wealth, wealth would forsake him. However, he regained his composure and said: “I have great respect for you both. Would you please act according to my instructions? Then only I can judge properly.” The visitors agreed. He said: “Mother wealth, would you please go to the entrance (gates) and walk into the house? Mother, Poverty! Would you please walk from here towards the gates? I can have a good look at you both, from near and far.” The two visitors did walk as the merchant wished them to. Then the merchant happily declared: “Mother wealth! You appear very beautiful when you enter the house. Mother Poverty! You look very beautiful when you leave the



house!" The **visitors** appreciated the wisdom of the merchant. Wealth happily stayed in his house while poverty cheerfully walked away. When a serious problem faces us, if we look within and think calmly, a ray of hope and light will appear and show us the way.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

- 1- What is the moral of the story?
- 2- What did the visitors ask the merchant to do?
- 3- How did the merchant act wisely?
- 4- In your opinion, which one is more beautiful Wealth or poverty? Why?

**B- Choose the right answer from a . b . c or d:**

- 5- The word '**visitors**' refers to.....
  - a) The merchants
  - b) The Problems
  - c) The wisdom
  - d) Wealth and Poverty
- 6- The way to solve a problem is to.....
  - a) rush
  - b) think calmly
  - c) hesitate
  - d) stop thinking

**E- Writing**

9) Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) only of the following:

- a) A journey you took.
- b) A science fiction story you have read.

**F- Translation**

10. A) Translate into Arabic :

- 1- Jules Verne was called the father of science fiction.
- 2- Do you agree that we should have challenges in our lives?

B) Translate into English :

1 - قام بعض الأشخاص باختطافه أثناء رحلته الاستكشافية .



**ج JOURNEY | TOOK**

رحلة قمت بها

**In the following lines, I'm going to write about a journey I took. Firstly** I would like to start with saying where this journey was.. My journey was to India. I travelled to India with my friends. We travelled by plane. When we reached India, we visited a lot of places. One of my friends decided to ride an elephant. At first, nothing happened when suddenly the elephant my friend was riding ran fast taking my friend to the woods. We were very worried about our friends. Luckily a rescue team arrived and save my friend who was not badly injured. He was only shocked and he decided never to ride elephants again. **Finally** we finished our journey and returned back home by plane.





phobias	مخاوف مرضية	expert	خبير
mania	ولع - جنون	tunnel	نفق - سرداب
fear	الخوف	bite - bit - bitten	يعض
frightened	خائف	last	يستمر - يدوم
dizzy	دايخ - مصاب بدوار	injured	مصاب
get over	يشفى - يتغلب على	wounded	مجروح
recover	يشفى	hurt	يؤلم - يؤذى
Panic - panicked	يخاف	silence	صمت
avoid	يتجنب	silent	صامت
overcrowded	مزدحم	goal	هدف
irrational	غير منطقي	patient	مريض
session	جلسة دراسية	crops	محاصيل
therapist	طبيب نفسى - معالج	poisonous	سام
virtual	عملى / فعلى	sharks	أسماك القرش
clear-headed	صافى الزهن	doll	دمية
the underground	مترو الأنفاق	spider	عنكبوت
lift = elevator	مصعد	affect	يؤثر على
anxiety (n)	قلق	fail	يفشل
anxious (adj.)	قلق	situation	موقف
treatment	علاج	unreasonable	غير منطقي
lose balance	يفقد التوازن	reasonable	معقول - منطقي
passengers	ركاب - مسافرون	criminal	مجرم
customers	زبائن	crime	جريمة
fall asleep	ينام	physical	بدنى
dusty	مترب	mental	عقلى
nightmare	كابوس	confidence	ثقة

## Definitions تعريفات

- 1 - Phobia** خوف مرضى / رهاب  
- a strong, unreasonable fear of something.
- 2 - dizzy** دايخ / يشعر بدوخة  
- A feeling that you are losing balance.
- 3 - irrational** غير مبرر / غير منطقي  
- It means not reasonable.
- 4 - session** جلسة دراسية  
- It is a meeting or period for meetings.



**5 - situation** موقف

- It is a state of affairs.

**6 - therapist** معالج (علاج therapy)

- It is the person who helps someone with a phobia.

**7 - virtual** افتراضى

- It is when a computer makes you feel as though you are.

**8 - get over** يشفى

- It means to feel better after a bad experience or after being ill.

**9 - panic** يخاف / خوف

- It is a sudden strong feeling of fear or anxiety.

**10 - dolls** دُمى (جمع دميمة)

- They are toys in the shape of a small human being.

**Prepositions** حروف جر

recover from	يشفى من	born with	مولود بـ
get over	يشفى من / يتغلب على	a fear of	خوف من
take off	تقلع - يخلع	suffer from	يعانى من
believe in	يؤمن بـ	break down	يتعطل - ينهار
get away from	يهرب من	close to	قريب من
fall off	يسقط - يقع	look like	يشبه
dream of	يحلم بـ	pick up	يلتقط
frightened of	مرعوب من	look worried	يبدو قلقا

Examples:

- He was born with a phobia but he recovered from it.
- Children are always frightened of spiders.
- I can't pick up a spider, it is frightening.
- Rodayna looks like her mother.
- He was born with a fear of cats.
- He couldn't get over his wife's death.

**Expressions** تعبيرات

have a dream	irrational fears
open places	get away /
feel dizzy	fear of heights
sports ground ( )	feel in control of

Examples:

- Yesterday, my little sister had a bad dream.
- Some people feel dizzy on looking down from high places.
- Phobias are irrational fears.



## Language Notes

- ▶ **phobia** رهاب / خوف غير مبرر  
 ▶ **fear** خوف طبيعي  
Ex: Phobia is irrational fear of something.  
Ex: The citizens of the town live in fear of enemy attack.

- ▶ **dolls** دمي / عرائس غير متحركة  
 ▶ **puppets** عرائس متحركة  
Ex: Girls always have more dolls than boys.  
Ex: I went to the theatre and watched the puppets show.

- ▶ **sting** - stung - stung يلدغ / يلسع (بابرة، شوكة، ذنب)  
 ▶ **bite** - bit - bitten يعض (بأسنان)  
Ex: A wasp\scorpion\bee stung my sister last week.  
Ex: A snake\dog bit me yesterday.



- Speaker 1** : I used to have a phobia about spiders. My father was frightened of spiders, so my phobia must have come from him. I remember him telling me that many spiders are **poisonous**. I always thought that any spider I saw was going to bite me, so I avoided all places where I might find a spider in it. And I never visited old buildings that might have been their home.
- Speaker 2** : My mother says I loved **dolls** until I was about five, so fear of dolls can't have been a phobia I was born with. It just happened slowly, like an illness. When I was seven, one of aunts tried to help me to get over this fear. She brought me an old doll, then **took off** its **hair** to show me that it wasn't a real person. Of course this just made everything worse. For weeks after I had bad dreams about dolls. Now, if I see a doll, I feel ill and **dizzy**. I must **get away** from it.
- Speaker 3** : When I was fifteen, I was in London and I had to travel on the underground. The train was full of people. Everyone was talking or reading their newspapers, then the train stopped in a **tunnel**. Most people stayed quite calm, but I began to **panic**. I ran up and down the train **crying** and **shouting**. After about five minutes, the train started moving again, and I got out at the next station. **Since then** I haven't travelled on the underground. I don't like being in very small places that must be why I have a phobia about **lifts**, too. In my last job I worked on the fourteenth floor of an office building, but I went up by the **stairs**, not the lift. I sometimes took the lift just to show myself that I could do it, but I didn't enjoy it.
- Speaker 4** : Going to the park and other **open places** can be terrible for me. I have a very strange feeling when I go to these places. The small streets near my home and small shops aren't a problem, but a trip to a big open space like a park or a **sports ground** can be a **nightmare**. I hear my own voice saying, "I must **get away** ! "I'm really afraid of **open spaces**.





## READING



### Treatments For Phobias

**Phobias** are not just **extreme fears**-they are **irrational fears**. They can affect people's lives and make them **frightened** to do things which most people do without thinking. For example, if you have a fear of heights, you may drive 40 kilometres to avoid a high bridge.

The **usual treatment** is to slowly show the person who has the phobia what they fear. For example, a person with a spider phobia first **thinks** about a spider, then looks at **photographs** of spiders, and finally looks at a **real** spider. The **therapist** who is giving the treatment remains **calm** and helps the patient to **relax**. The person with the phobia feels in control of the situation and, because of this, they do not **panic**. After a few **sessions**, they realize that the things they are afraid of cannot **hurt** them.

In another treatment, the therapist **gets close** to the spider and **picks it up** without showing any fear. This helps the patient to see that he or she has **nothing** to fear.

Some phobias can be treated in a few sessions with the therapist. Some people with phobias need **medicine** to help them relax before treatment. Treatment can be done in **groups** where people with the same phobia are helped together. It is also possible to have treatment from a **computer program**, where the patient is put into a **virtual situation** with the thing he or she fears.

## QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

### 1- What are "phobias" ?

Phobias are extreme fears and irrational fears .

### 2- How can phobias affect people's lives ?

By making them frightened to do things which most people do without thinking .

### 3- Give some examples of phobias ?

Fear of heights, fear of darkness, open areas, animals and insects .



### 4- How can phobias be treated ?

By showing the person who has the phobia what they fear. Some people with phobia need medicine. Through a computer programme.

### 5- How can a person with a spider phobia be treated ?

He first thinks about a spider, then looks at photographs of spiders and finally looks at a real spider.

### 6- When can we say that a person with phobia got over it \recovered?

When he feels in control of the situation and doesn't panic. After a few sessions, they realize that the thing they are afraid of cannot hurt them.



**7- Why do a therapist get close to the spider and picks it up ?**

This helps the patient to see that he or she has nothing to fear .

**8- Why do therapist give some patients with phobia medicines ?**

To make them calm before the treatment .

**9- How can a person with phobia be treated from computer programs?****How can computer help a person with phobia ?**

The patient is put into a virtual situation with the thing he or she fears .

**10- How is a phobia different from a fear ?**

A phobia is stronger than a fear, and is irrational .

**11- What kind of things are people commonly afraid of ?**

Heights, spiders, insects, mice, snakes, flying, the dark ..... etc .

**12- Why is it important for the patients with phobias to relax ?**

The treatment will not work if patents panic .

**13- Why do you think it takes a few sessions for patients to realise they do not need to be afraid ?**

It takes time to build up their confidence in the therapist and the methods .

**14- Why are phobias irrational fears ?**

They are irrational fears because the thing they are afraid of cannot hurt them .

**15- How can people with the same phobia be treated ?**

The can be treated in groups .

**16- Why do you think a lot of people are afraid of spiders, but not of a butterflies?**

Because butterflies are beautiful, but spiders are ugly.

**17- What is the difference between fear and phobia?**

Fear is natural and rational whereas phobia is irrational fears.



# Deduction Grammar الاستنتاج



☛ **must be\Inf.** ( 90 % ) لابد وأنه .....  
( I'm sure - I think - certainly - It's definitely - no doubt ... )

- He is afraid of spiders. He must have a phobia.
- He owns two cars, he must be rich .

☛ **can't be\Inf.** ( ) لا يمكن أن يكون .....  
( I'm sure .. Not - I think .. not - certainly .. not - It's definitely .. not .. )

- He can't be Egyptian, he doesn't speak Arabic .
- He borrows a lot of money, he can't be rich .

☛ **may be\Inf.** ( 70 % ) محتمل أن يكون .....  
( I'm not sure - perhaps - It's probable .... )

- He is absent today, he may be ill .
- I'm not sure but I think she may come.

☛ **might be\Inf.** ( 30 % ) من الممكن أن يكون .....  
( I don't think - It's possible - I have no idea .... )

لممكن استخدام نفس تعبيرات *may be*

- He might be French, but he is probably Italian .
- I have no idea where Ali is. He might be at home.



☛ **must have + p.p**

- He is afraid of snakes, a snake must have frightened him when he was a child .
- Ahmed is a famous doctor now. He must have been a clever student.

☛ **can't have + p.p**

- It's only 4 o'clock. The match can't have finished already .
- I loved dolls until I was about five, so a fear of dolls can't have been a phobia I was born with.

☛ **may have + p.p**

- Salim was absent yesterday, he may have been ill .

☛ **might have + p.p**

- I hated opening cupboards because I might have found a spider.



# Homework



## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

**Therapist:** What do you complain of?

**Ahmed :** ..... (1).....

**Therapist:** When did you start to be frightened of spiders?

**Ahmed :** .....(2).....

**Therapist:** What do you do when you see spiders on TV?

**Ahmed :** .....(3).....

**Therapist:** That's good. You will get better soon.

**Ahmed :** .....(4)..... ?

## 2) Write that you would say in each of the following situations :

- 1- Your friend looks gloomy. Make a deduction.
- 2- Your teacher asks you why your friend Ali is absent today. Guess a reason.
- 3- Advise your friend who has a phobia of cats.
- 4- Your friend looks anxious. Seek a reason.

## 3) Choose the correct answer:

- 1- If you turn around many times, You may feel ( **dizzy - afraid - happy - sad** )
- 2- She ( **can't - must - has to - should** ) be only 30, she looks much older .
- 3- He ( **can't have gone - must go - must have gone - would have gone** ) to hospital as he had had great pain .
- 4- ( **A therapist - A scientist - An artist - A receptionist** ) helps patients with their treatment
- 5- If you feel extremely frightened of something you have a ( **phobia - dream - pleasure - photo** )
- 6- Doctors are trying out a new ( **doubt - treatment - tour - troop** ) of cancer
- 7- Phobias can ( **effect - affect - inject - infect** ) people's lives and make them frightened
- 8- Her fears of spiders are ( **national - irrational - infected - injured** ) .
- 9- Wash your hands so that you will not ( **hold - match - reach - catch** ) an illness.
- 10- When you ( **panic- punish - pause - pass** ), you lose control of yourself .
- 11- She traveled ( **at - out - on - of** ) the underground .
- 12- People ran into the streets in a ( **panic - pardon - post - pole** ) after the explosion.
- 13- We got ( **out - off - over - in** ) an illness and went to her work .
- 14- They live in ( **feed - fair - fare - fear** ) of money attack .
- 15- She has a ( **phobia - media - fiction - infection** ) about snakes .
- 16- She was ( **alert - able - capable - afraid** ) of spiders when she was a child .
- 17- He was shivering, he ( **may have been - must have been - might have been - must be** ) cold .
- 18- A long line of people is waiting to get a tickets, the film ( **might be - could be - may be - must be** ) a good one .
- 19- He ( **might be - must be - is - will be** ) a lawyer; I don't think so .
- 20- I don't know where he lives, he ( **might be - may be - must be - will be** ) in Zamalek
- 21- He gets the best marks; he ( **must be - can't be - must have been - can't have been** ) intelligent .
- 22- The restaurant ( **must - may - can't - might** ) be very good. It's always full of people .
- 23- Ali passed the exam without studying hard for it, the exam ( **can't - may - might - must** ) have been very difficult .
- 24- If you get ( **on - off - out - over** ) an illness, You recover from it .
- 25- A ( **ball - doll - snake - patient** ) is a toy person .
- 26- This spider is ( **poison - prison - poisonous - useful** ) .
- 27- If you ( **like - prefer - avoid - suggest** ) something, you try not to see it .



- 28- She took ( **over - after - of - off** ) the hair of the doll to show me that it wasn't a real person .
- 29- When I was younger, I often dreamt ( **off - at - about - on** ) tunnels .
- 30- My brother was born ( **of - from - with - about** ) a fear of cats .
- 31- As a result of her illness, she feels ( **bored - dizzy - glad - frustrated** ) when she stands up .
- 32- People who are frightened ( **off - at - by - of** ) open spaces don't like large parks .
- 33- A computer makes you feel as if in a ( **unreal - untrue - false - virtual** ) situation by showing images and sounds .
- 34- The patients don't ( **run - panic - get away - affect** ) because they are always in control
- 35- Some treatment puts people into the ( **situation - sanitation - session - panic** ) they are afraid of .
- 36- Some one with a fear of ( **spiders - flying - drugs - heights** ) wouldn't climb a tall tree or a mountain .
- 37- You can ( **reply - delete - deny - avoid** ) a lot of problems by using traveller's cheques
- 38- She still has ( **nights - ghosts - nightmares - nightingales** ) about the accident .
- 39- He is happy. His team ( **may - can't - might - must** ) have lost the match .
- 40- Phobias make people ( **frightened - pleased - joyful - eager** ) to do very normal things
- 41- After a few ( **seasons - sections - sessions - possessions** ) patients realise that the thing they are afraid of can't hurt them .
- 42- There is no ( **reason - emotion - cause - sense** ) for the person to be afraid .
- 43- Phobias are ( **external - excited - experienced - extreme** ) feet .
- 44- Don't worry. Everything is under ( **vision - control - consumption - violence** )
- 45- ( **Planes - Trains - Boats - Rockets** ) are used for travelling into space .
- 46- Sometimes people with the same phobia are treated in ( **schools - crowd - community - groups** )
- 47- My father was frightened of spiders, so my phobia ( **must come - can't come - must have come - can't have come** ) from him.
- 48- ( **Fear - Fare - Fair - Fur** ) is the feeling you get when you are afraid or worried that something bad will happen .
- 49- ( **Pleasure - Joy - Phobia - A disease** ) is a strong, unreasonable fear of something.
- 50- To feel ( **fizzy - lazy - busy - dizzy** ) is to feel that you are losing your balance, for example, because you have been spinning round or you are ill .
- 51- To get ( **at - for - over - on** ) means to feel better after a bad experience, or after being ill .
- 52- ( **Pleasure - Enjoyment - Worry - Panic** ) is a sudden strong feeling of fear or anxiety that makes you unable to think clearly or behave sensibly .
- 53- To ( **affect - infect - avoid - feed** ) something means to make sure that something bad does not happen.
- 54- To ( **affect - infect - avoid - feed** ) means to cause a change in someone or to change the situation they are in .
- 55- ( **Rational - Irrational - Fashionable - Legal** ) means not reasonable .
- 56- ( **Season - Session - Oppression - Possession** ) means a period of time used for a particular purpose .
- 57- A / An ( **translator - interpreter - scientist - therapist** ) is someone whose job is to do a particular type of therapy treatment of a mental or physical illness .
- 58- ( **Functional - Visual - Virtual - Vertical** ) means as if in a real situation .

**4) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

- 1- I'm sure Tarek hasn't finished reading that book. He only started it two hours ago. ( **Tarek can't** )  
.....
- 2- Youssif is really hungry. He probably didn't have enough breakfast. ( **can't** )  
.....
- 3- It is just possible he stole the money, but I don't think so . ( **might** )  
.....
- 4- I think he is definitely a doctor. ( **must** )  
.....
- 5- I'm sure he had won the match. He looked happy . ( **must** )  
.....
- 6- He is definitely not innocent. ( **must** )  
.....



- 7- I think it is quite possible, he travelled to Alexandria yesterday. (might)
- 8- It was impossible for the boy to get the prize . (can't)
- 9- I am sure he is definitely unhappy. (can't)
- 10- I'm sure I left my umbrella in the restaurant last night . (must)
- 11- The man might have killed his wife. (It.....)
- 12- My grandfather had flu last week, and he has not recovered yet. (get over)
- 13- I think Hadeel broke her leg. (might)
- 14- It is impossible that Amal sold her car. (can't)

**5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

- 1- If you have phobia, you miss control of yourself.
- 2- If you turn round and round too many times, you meel feel busy.
- 3- A dull is a toy which looks like a baby or small person.
- 4- I always pink of snakes.
- 5- A season is a meeting or periods of meetings.
- 6- A physiotherapist is a person who helps someone with a phobia.
- 7- An irritable fear is a fear there is no reason for.
- 8- Virtecal is something on a computer that is not real.
- 9- People use lefts instead of stairs to go up high levels.
- 10- Many spiders are poisoned.
- 11- Last week, a snake stung my little kitten.
- 12- Many people like to spend their times in opening places.
- 13- Phobias can effect people's lives.
- 14- A nightingale is a very bad dream.
- 15- Yesterday, I was in a very embarrassing station. I could not get out of it.

**6) Read the following passage, and then answer the questions :**

In every house where a child lives there is a spy, and that is the child itself. No matter what parents do, they are being watched. Their child keeps them under close observation and takes note of what they do . Mothers have always being astonished and flattered of course to see their child pretending to prepare a meal , just like mummy does . So early at the age of two ,a child will normally start **mimicking** the expressions and voice tones of adults . He continues to do so far about eighteen months, after which he begins to make normal judgments, adding reasoning, i.e., the use of his mind and logic to mimicking. Parents should do their best to watch for his moment as it is vital to their child's development. It is the period that will partly decide the future personality and behaviour of a child. They shouldn't simply admire and laugh at amusing and funny behaviour of their children

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- In what way is a child like a spy ?
- 2- What age do children begin to think and make their own judgment ?
- 3 - How do mothers feel when their children imitate them ?
- 4 – Why does the writer advise parents to watch their children ?



**B) Choose the correct answer:**

- 5 – A child is a spy because he / she.....
- a) reveals the secrets of his country      b) reveals his secrets  
c) practices what he gets                      d) repots secrets
- 6- The underlined word "**mimmicking**" means .....
- a) imitating      b) copying      c) leading      d ) pretending

**E- Writing**

**9) Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) only of the following:**

- a) A phobia you had and now you got it over.  
b) Treatments of phobia.

**F- Translation**

**10) . A) Translate into Arabic :**

1- If you panic this means you lose control of yourself .

.....

2- The personal computer is having an effect on your lives equal to electric light bulb.

.....

**B) Translate into English :**

1 - الـرهـاب هو خوف غير مبرر ويفوق الخوف العادي .

.....

**PHOBIA | HAD IN THE PAST****خوف مرضي كان لادي في الماضي**

**In the following lines, I'm going to write about** a phobia I had in the past. When I was ten years old, my mother went out and left me alone at night. At first nothing happened when suddenly the light went out and the flat became very dark. When this happened I imagined shapes moving and I felt that ghosts were trying to kill me. I was so frightened that I began to cry loudly. I tried to run but I hit a table and fainted. Then my mother came and found me lying on the floor. When I recovered I told her what had happened. Since then, I hate darkness and I have a phobia of dark places. But now I recovered from it.



**REVIEW E**

coast  
 territories  
 island  
 busy port  
 population  
 close to  
 square kilometre  
 environment  
 parks  
 pound  
 financial centre  
 trade centre  
 importance  
 law  
 enforcement

terrible conditions  
 results  
 poverty  
 robberies  
 legal system  
 trials  
 punishment  
 harsh  
 sentences  
 prisoners  
 the rest of  
 pay a fine  
 confident  
 criminals  
 freely

**Hong Kong – a wonder of the modern world**

Hong Kong is in the South China Sea near to the south east coast of China. It consists of Hong Kong Island, Lantau Island, Kowloon, the New Territories and 263 other small islands. In the past, only fishermen and farmers lived in Hong Kong, but today it is a busy port and an important trade centre. Many of China's exports pass through Hong Kong. It is also well known as a shopping centre.

Hong Kong has a population of 7 million people in a land area of 1,100 sq km. This means that people have to live very close to each other. There are 6,900 people in every square kilometer. Despite this, Hong Kong is a good environment to live in- it has quiet parks, beaches and mountains to climb.

From 1842 to 1997, Hong Kong was British, but in 1997 it became part of China. The two most important languages are Chinese and English. It has its own television, radio and newspapers and its own money, the Hong Kong dollar.

To many people, Hong Kong is one of the world's greatest cities because it is such a successful financial and trade centre.



## QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

### 1- Where is Hong Kong located?

It is located near the south east coast of China .

### 2- What does Hong Kong consist of?

It consists of Hong Kong Island, Lantau Island, Kowloon, The new territories and 236 other small islands .

### 3- Who lived and worked in Hong Kong in the past?

Only fishermen and farmers lived in Hong Kong in the past .

### 4- How has Hong Kong changed today?

Today it is a busy port and an important financial and trade centre .

### 5- Why is Hong Kong important for China?

Most of China's exports to other countries pass through Hong Kong .

### 6- What is Hong Kong known for?

It is well known as a shopping centre and for its markets .

### 7- What do you know for Hong Kong's population and area?

It has a population of 7 million people in a land area of 1,100 sq km.

### 8- How was Hong Kong from 1842 to 1997?

It was a British colony .

### 9- When did Hong Kong become part of China?

In 1997 .

### 10- What languages do people in Hong Kong speak?

The most important two languages are Chinese and English .

### 11- What is the currency of Hong Kong?

It is the Hong Kong dollar .

### 12- Why is Hong Kong considered one of the greatest cities in the world?

Because it is such a successful financial and trade centre .

### 13- Why is it surprising that Hong Kong has quiet parks?

Because it is densely-populated with limited land area .

## EXTRA READING

### The Importance Of Law Enforcement

In the England of Charles Dickens's time, very poor people like Oliver Twist, who had no money and no home, had to live in **terrible conditions**. One of the **results** of this **poverty** was a lot of street crimes, particularly **robberies**, and the number of these crimes rose quickly during the first half of the nineteenth century. The number of **violent crimes** also rose and this worried many people.

In situations like these, laws have to be **enforced** to protect society, and for successful law **enforcement**, society needs **honest** police officers and an **efficient legal system** which makes people feel safe. Trials and the **punishment** of **criminals** must also be completely **fair**.



In the time of Oliver Twist, **punishments** were harsh and **included** long **prison sentences**. Some **criminals** lost their lives. Other prisoners were sent from England to Australia, often to spend the rest of their lives away from their families. Today, in most countries, punishments are less **harsh** and there are different punishments for less **serious crimes**. For example, some criminals may have to pay a **fine**. Others cannot travel **freely** and have to stay in their **hometown**.

Laws are made to **stop** people **from behaving** badly towards each other. But however good a law is, it must be **enforced** by the police and a **legal system** in which **the public** is **confident**.

## 1- QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

2- What happened to crime in the first half of the twentieth century in England?

- It rose quickly.

3- Why do laws have to be enforced in some countries?

- To protect society from the increasing crimes and robberies.

4- What does society need for successful law enforcement?

-It needs honest police officers and an official legal system. Trials and the punishment of crimes must also be completely fair.

5- Why are laws made?

-They are made to stop people from behaving badly towards each other.

6- Where were some criminals sent to live?

They were sent to live outside their countries to spend the rest of their lives away from their families.

7- What must a good law be?

-A good law must be enforced by the police and a legal system in which the public is confident.



## REVISION E

(Workbook pages 89- 92)

### A. Language Functions

1) **Finish the following dialogue:**

Zeinab and Hala are talking about how to study for exams.

Zeinab : 1) .....

Hala : Of course. What advice would you like ?

Zeinab : 2).....?

Hala : To revise for the English test, I'd read all your notes first

Zeinab : Manal did a test yesterday. Do you think she read all her notes first?

Hala : 3)..... She only got 10 out of 50. I'm sure she'll do better next time.

Zeinab : 4).....?

Hala : I get nervous about exams sometimes, but no, I don't have a phobia !

2) **Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

a. An English friend wants to walk in the desert in August You do not think this is a good idea. Give him/her advice.

b. You arrange to meet two friends in the park but one friend does not arrive. Say why you think he didn't come.

c. Your school has the date 1969 above the door. A friend asks you what the date means.

d. A friend asks you how to get to the swimming pool. There is a bus that goes there.



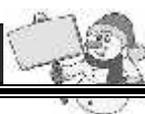
**B. Vocabulary and Structure**

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The playground .....by all the children in the school.  
 a) used                      b) is used                      c) is use                      d) is using
2. The man ..... wrote this poem is from Alexandria.  
 a) what                      b) which                      c) who                      d) whose
3. I can't remember how old I was when I first saw the Pyramids, but I..... four.  
 a) must be                      b) might be                      c) can't have                      d) might have been
4. They are all wearing coats, so it ..... cold when they took the photograph!  
 a) must be                      b) must have been                      c) can't have been                      d) can be
5. This is the jacket .....my grandmother made.  
 a) what                      b) which                      c) who                      d) where
6. This house was built .....Hala's grandfather.  
 a) of                      b) to                      c) with                      d) by
7. The dress is too long, so please can you ..... it  
 a) short                      b) shorter                      c) shortened                      d) shorten
8. At what time does the plane take .....?  
 a) up                      b) on                      c) off                      d) of
9. The plane usually f lies at an ..... of 7,000 metres.  
 a) altitude                      b) high                      c) level                      d) up
10. His book first came..... in2012.  
 a) in                      b) out                      c) up                      d) off
11. Mr Hassan .....a lot of weight while he was ill.  
 a) lost                      b) missed                      c) caught                      d) left
12. Most people's phobias are ..... : there is no reason for them.  
 a) irrational                      b) virtual                      c) dizzy                      d) bare

**4) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning.**

- a. Hamdi 's uncle started to control that hotel two years ago. (take over)  
 .....
- b. Mr Smith teaches us English and is from London. (who)  
 .....
- c. I was late because I did not catch the eight o'clock bus. (miss)  
 .....
- d. Grandfather had flu last week, and he has not recovered yet . (get over)  
 .....
- e. French engineer started the Suez Canal (by)  
 .....



**5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

1. My cousins will soon take part on a course to learn photography.
2. The course is very expensive and my cousins can't invite it.
3. My cousins won't price anything because they won a school competition.
4. They will miss a train to go there every week.

**C. Reading Comprehension and the set books****6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Kramerbrücke in Germany is the longest bridge in the world that has buildings on it. It was built over the Gera River in 1325. There were several bridges over the river before this date, but these were made of wood. It might have been dangerous to cross the river at this time, because there were often fires on the bridges.

The bridge which you can visit today was built of stone. There are 62 buildings on it. Most of them are used by people who make glass, plates and clothes. Some of them are shops where you can buy souvenirs. It is an amazing place, although when you walk across it, you do not realise you are on a bridge because you cannot see the river!

**1. What is special about Kramerbrücke?**

.....

**2. Why do you think there were often fires on the bridge?**

.....

**3. What can you buy on the bridge?**

.....

**4. Why do you think the bridge is popular with tourists?**

.....

**5. They built the bridge of stone because ..**

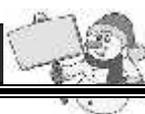
- |                       |   |
|-----------------------|---|
| a. it would not burn. | b. wooden bridges were not strong enough. |
| c. it looked nicer.   | d. it stops you seeing the river.         |

**6. The underlined word them refers to ...**

- |               |                   |
|---------------|-------------------|
| a. bridges    | b. 62 buildings   |
| c. high walls | d. amazing places |

**7) Answer only FOUR (4) of the following questions:**

1. Why was it very difficult to travel around the world in eighty days when Jules Verne wrote his book?
2. Do you think that it was very important for Fogg to win £20,000? Why? Why not?
3. Why do you think that when they went to India, part of the railway line was not finished?
4. How do we know that Fogg does not only think about himself?
5. Why did they miss their train to London near the end of their journey?
6. Why did it help them that they crossed the International Date Line?



**D. The Novel****8. Answer the following questions:**

1. What did Monks drop into the river?  
.....

2. How did Oliver find Mr Brownlow again?  
.....

3. How could Rose Maylie contact Nancy if she needed information?  
.....

4. What is the real name of Morris Bolter?  
.....

5. Why do you think Nancy cries when she hears the conversation between Fagin and Monks?  
.....

"Perhaps you have some money for this information?"

6. Who said this to whom?  
.....

7. What information does the money giver want?  
.....

8. Do you think it is right to give information in exchange for money? Why or why not?  
.....

**E. Writing**

**9) Write an email to a friend of about ninety (90} words on one (1) of the following:**

- something you are frightened of.
- a journey that you took.

**F. Translation**

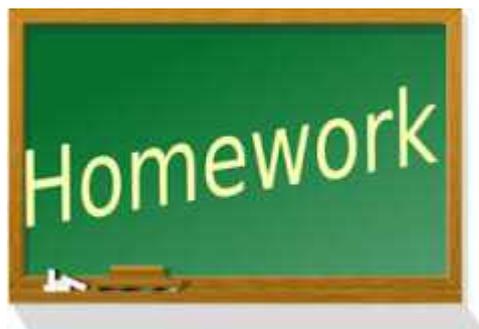
**10) a. Translate into Arabic:**

1.They started building the first stage of the railway in 1970.  
.....

2. The tourists must have come from a cold country.  
.....

**b. Translate into English:**

هل خرجوا إلى السوق مؤخرًا؟  
.....



## Today's world problems

<p>biodiversity species / extinct / extinction disappear disappearance ecosystem ecology ecologist insect habitats forests crops legal / illegal climate weather change threat threaten temperature The Arctic Polar bear The north pole survive / survivors / survival / predict prediction / The Amazon inexpensive</p>	<p>population populated / over population agriculture agricultural hectare ( 10,000 ) process ( ) store stores suitable suitability / certain / uncertain production produce / productive producer growth grow / growing / shortage quarter High-quality affect effect reclaim reclamation development / develop / reason traffic</p>
---	---

### Definitions تعريفات

**1 - biodiversity** التنوع البيئي / البيولوجي

- the number of types of plants and animals in an area.

**2 - species** فصيلة / سلالة - لإصائل / سلالات

- a group of animals or plants of the same kind.

**3 - ecosystem** نظام بيئي

- the animals and plants in an area and their relation to each other.



- 4 - get rid of** يتخلص من  
- throw away, sell something so that you do not have it any more.
- 5 - extinct** منقرض / خامد  
- describing an animal or plant that no longer exists.
- 6 - habitat** موطن  
- natural environment in which a plant or an animal lives.
- 7 - climate change** تغير المناخ  
- changes to the usual weather patterns because of the increases in carbon dioxide caused by the use of fossil fuels.
- 8 - threat** تهديد  
- something that may cause damage to a person or thing.
- 9 - survive** ينجو / يحيا  
- to continue to live or exist in a difficult situation.
- 10 - reclaim** يستصح  
- make land useful for farming, building, etc.
- 11 - productive** منتج  
- fertile.\ produces a lot.
- 12 - agricultural** زراعى  
- related to the work of growing crops and keeping animals on farms for food.
- 13 - hectare** هكتار  
- a unit for measuring an area of land, equal to 10,000 square metres.
- 14 - process** عملية  
- a series of things you do to achieve a particular result.
- 15 - production** انتاج  
- the process of making or growing things, or the amount that is produced.
- 16 - store** يخزن  
- to put things away and keep them until you need them.
- 17 - suitable** مناسب / ملائم  
- right or appropriate for a particular purpose or situation.

### Prepositions حروف جر

on TV	in danger
die of	go up by /
die from ( - )	turn....into .....
die out	move out of
way of +v-ing	on the earth
way to + Inf.	cut down
get rid of	Protect....from

#### Examples:

- Dinosaurs are animals which died out millions of years ago.
- There are many ways of solving this problem.
- The earth's temperature will go up by 2C tomorrow.
- People should stop cutting down forests.



## Expressions تعبيرات

play a role  
human activities  
become extinct  
climate change  
agricultural land

remote areas  
hunt animals  
cutting down forests  
raise animals  
natural habitats

### Examples:

- Animals and plants play an important role in our ecosystem.
- Many species are disappearing because of human activities.
- Insects may become extinct if the crops they live on disappear.
- We should stop cutting down forests to provide land for growing crops.
- Floods and very high temperatures are the result of climate change.

## Phrasal verbs with keep

keep up with  
keep on  
keep away from

/

keep off  
keep...out  
keep out of

### Examples:

- World food production should keep up with population growth.
- Imad was very tired, but he kept on running as fast as he could.
- They're good girls who always try to keep out of trouble.
- There's a large sign in the park which says, "Keep off the grass."
- You should keep medicines away from children.

## Language Notes

- ▶ **produce** يُنْتِج
- ▶ **produce** ناتج / نتاج / منتج مزرعة ( فواكه وخضار )
- ▶ **productive** منتج
- ▶ **productivity** انتاجية
- ▶ **producer** منتج (دولة / شركة)
- ▶ **production** انتاج

Ex: The blood produces cells.

Ex: Farm produces are always fresh.

Ex: Our meeting today was very productive.

Ex: We should increase the productivity of our factories.

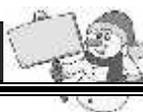
Ex: Scotland is a producer of high quality wool.

Ex: Our production has increased by 35%.

- ▶ **climate** مناخ ( حالة الجو لفترة طويلة )
- ▶ **weather** طقس ( حالة الجو لفترة قصيرة )

Ex: The climate in this area is very dry. There is no rain for years.

Ex: I'll go out if the weather is fine today.



- **certain**                      اكد / محدد  
 ► **uncertain**                    غير اكد

**Ex:** I'm certain that Sahar is telling the truth.

**Ex:** A certain person wants to put me in trouble.

**Ex:** His future with the company is uncertain

## السؤال عن وعمل اقتراحات Asking for and making suggestions

### ☛ Asking for suggestion:

- What do you suggest.....?
- What's your suggestion about.....?
- Can you make a suggestion about.....?

### ☛ Making suggestion

- What \ How about + V-ing.....?
- Let's + Inf.,.....?
- Why don't we + Inf.....?
- Shall we + Inf.....?
- I suggest + V-ing.....?



- Hussein** : Did you see that programme on television last night about **biodiversity**?
- DINA** : No, I didn't. Was it interesting?
- Hussein** : Yes, very.
- DINA** : So what is biodiversity?
- Hussein** : It means the number of different plants and animals in the world. There are millions of different **species** and they are still discovering new species of animals and plants today in remote areas. Scientists won't have discovered all of these species for hundreds of years. The problem is that by that time, many of the species will have become **extinct** before we even know about them.
- DINA** : So are we losing species of plants and animals?
- Hussein** : Yes, we are. That's what the programme was really about. They said that many species are disappearing because of **human activities**.
- DINA** : Does that matter?
- Hussein** : Yes. The problem is that every animal and plant **plays** an important **role** in our **ecosystem**. For example, if an insect lives on a certain plant and farmers **get rid of** that plant to grow their crops, that insect species may become extinct. This could mean that the birds and other animals which eat these insects will also **become extinct** in time.
- DINA** : I see what you mean. But what can we do to stop so many species **dying out**?
- Hussein** : Well, we should try to protect the **habitats** where they live. One way of doing that is to stop **cutting down forests** to grow crops.



- DINA** : There must be other things we can do.
- Hussein** : Well, we could protect animals and plants which are **in danger**. There are many ways of doing this, like making it **illegal** to hunt **certain** animals.
- DINA** : And what about climate changes? Is climate change a threat to biodiversity, too?
- Hussein** : Yes, I'm afraid so. Some scientists say that 40 percent of the Amazon will have gone by 2115 if the earth's temperature goes up by 2C. In the Arctic, animals like polar bears are predicting that thousands of species of plants and animals will have disappeared by the year 2100.
- DINA** : That's terrible. We have to do something to stop that from happening.
- Hussein** : I agree, but what can ordinary people do about **climate change**?
- DINA** : I don't know, but we have to try to do something.

## READING

### Feeding The World

## READING

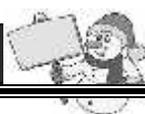
By 2050, the **population** of the world will have grown to about nine billion, and people are asking whether there will be enough food for everyone. The answer is **uncertain**.

**Scientists** say that, during the last 40 years, world food production has **kept up with population growth**, but this may not continue. Firstly, there is a **shortage of suitable land**. We have already used over a quarter of the earth's land area. By 2050, farmers will have already used even more **high-quality** land and will have to use **less-productive** areas. Secondly, in many countries there is already a shortage of water for growing groups, and this problem will probably have become worse by 2050. Finally, nobody knows how climate change will **affect** food production.

**Scientists** know that the world can produce enough food for the world's population, but millions of people are hungry because food is in the wrong place, is too expensive, or cannot be stored for long enough.

**One way in which** Egypt has increased food production is to turn desert areas into new agricultural land. In recent years, the country has **reclaimed** 400,000 **hectares** of desert and another 600,000 **hectares** will be added in the next few years. It is hoped that people will move out of the cities to work in agriculture and so help Egypt to produce more food. This **process** will only succeed if there is enough water and if this is managed carefully. In Abu Minqar, a Western Desert Oasis where water is **well managed**, farmers can grow many different crops and **raise animals** successfully.

**More development** like this will help Egypt and other countries to produce enough food for their **growing populations**.



## QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

**1- Why are there so many hungry people in the world?**

- Because food is in the wrong place, is too expensive, or cannot be stored for long enough.

**2- How has Egypt increased food production?**

- It has turned desert areas into new agricultural land.

**3- Why can farmers grow many different crops and raise animals successfully in Abu Minqar?**

- Because the water is well- managed there.

**4- Do you think it is a good idea to reclaim land for farming? Why? Why not?**

- Yes, because the population will go up and we need to feed the growing population.

**5- Why is water so important? Think of its different uses.**

- Because we need water for cooking, washing, drinking, growing plants and for many industrial processes. Most importantly, it is essential to support all life forms.

**6- Do you think people will move out of the cities to help produce more food? Why? Why not?**

- Yes, some wise people will do to solve the problem of food shortage. Others will not.

**7- What food can and can't be stored for a long time?**

- Most soft fruits and some vegetables can't be stored. Most other things can be stored for a long time if they are frozen, dried or in tins.

**8- Why is some farm produce more expensive to buy than others?**

- As some farm produce takes a long time to grow and costs much.

**9- Would you want to grow your own food? Why? Why not?**

- Yes, to make sure it is organic and healthy.

**10- Why is it necessary to produce more food?**

- To feed the growing population.

**11- In your opinion, how can we increase food production?**

- We can reclaim more desert land.

**12- Why do you think we face food shortage in many parts of the world?**

- Because of climate change, erosion, building on the agricultural land.

**13- What is biodiversity?**

- It means the number of different plants and animals in the world .



# ★ Grammar ★

## The Future Perfect Tense      زمن المستقبل التام

### Formation      تكوينة

**Active** : S. + will have + P.P.....  
S. + will not have + P.P.....

Ex: By 2020, I **will have worked** in this school for ten years.

Ex: I have a lot of homework. I **will not have finished** it by tonight.

**Passive** : O. + will have + been + P.P.....  
O. + will not have + been + P.P.....

Ex: This project **will have been finished** by 2030.

**Interrogation** : Will+ S. + have + been + P.P.....?

Ex: **Will you have finished** reading this book by ten o'clock?

- Yes, I will.

- No, I won't.

### Usage      استخدامة

**يستخدم المستقبل التام ليعبر عن أحداث ستكون قد تمت أو انتهت بحلول وقت معين في المستقبل.**

Ex: By 2020 I **will have finished** my education.

Ex: By 2025, the government **will have finished** this project.

Ex: They **will have constructed** a new city in two years' time.

Ex: He **will not have finished** his homework by nine o'clock tonight.

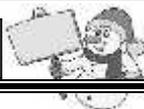
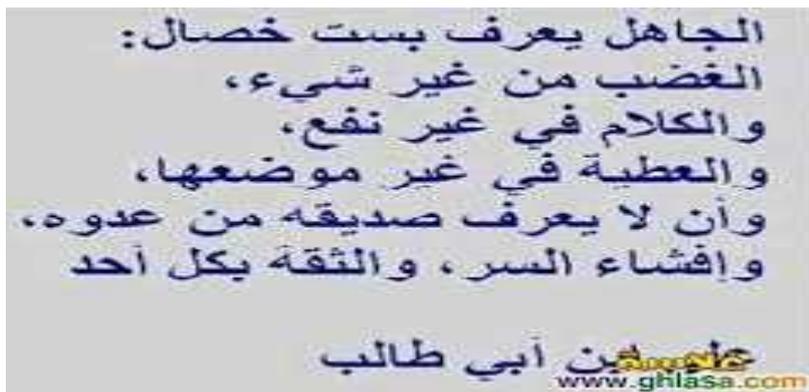
Ex: By the end of this year, I **will have read** five new books.

Ex: By the end of the lesson, I **will have studied** the present perfect.

Ex: In 2018, Mona **will have lived** in her house for ten years.

### Key words      الكلمات الدالة

By now, by 2020, in.....time, by the end of..., by the time he is.....



# Homework



## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

Ali and Ahmed are talking about their future hopes.

Ahmed : What are your hopes for the future?

Ali : .....(1).....

Ahmed : Why would you like to be a doctor?

Ali : .....(2).....

Ahmed : .....(3).....?

Ali : When I am thirty, I will have married and had my own hospital.

Ahmed : I wish all your hopes could come true.

Ali : .....(4).....

## 2) Write that you would say in each of the following situations :

1- Your friend looks gloomy. Make a deduction.

2- Your teacher asks you why your friend Ali is absent today. Guess a reason.

3- Advise your friend who has a phobia of cats.

4- Your friend looks anxious. Seek a reason.

## 3) Choose the correct answer :

1- It is always very sad when any animal becomes (**extinct - rid of - worse - alive**).

2- Please can you (**get over - get off - get rid off - get rid**) those empty bottles in the kitchen.

3- It is hard for people to (**alive - die - arrive - survive**) in the Arctic.

4- There are millions of (**spices - type - species - ones**) of plants living in the Amazon.

5- Many animals live in the city, although it is not their usual (**habit- hold - house - habitat**).

6- After all that rain, there is a real (**threaten - throw - threat - possible**) that the river will flood.

7- The land near the Nile is more (**produced - productive - deductive - predictive**) for farmers.

8- People (**store - reclaim - kill - buy**) food in a fridge in a kitchen.

9- By the end of next year, I (**will have visited - have visited - visited - will be visiting**) different towns.

10- By the end of the lesson, you (**will study - will have studied - have studied - studied**) the present perfect.

11- Some films are not (**settable - insatiable - suitable - eatable**) for your children.

12- Our science teacher asked us to do an experiment to understand the (**presses - process - procession - precision**) of evaporation.

13- To (**proclaim - claim - recline - reclaim**) protects us from infectious diseases

14- It is important to (**keep on - keep off - keep up with - keep out**) developments in technology.

15- When you have exams, try to (**keep on - keep off - keep up with - keep out**) studying.

16- When people argue, I always try to (**keep on - keep off - keep up with - keep out**) of the argument.

17- The mother told the small child to (**keep on - keep off - keep up with - keep out**) the grass.

18- A (**propose - process - operation - precise**) is things that you do or that happen to achieve a result.

19- (**Suitable - Profitable - Capable - Available**) means right for a particular situation.

20- To (**stare - stir - stair - store**) means to put somewhere to keep.

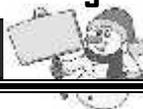
21- (**Productive - Deductive - Predictive - Inductive**) means very fertile.

22- The computers (**will - will be - will have - have**) used by all the children in the school.

23- Mona can't play tennis at 9.30 because she won't (**have finished - be finished - finished - finishing**) her homework by then.

24- Forests, deserts and mountains are different kinds of (**climate changes - habitats - laws - phobias**)

25- By 2050, the population of Egypt will (**grow - have grown - be grown - growing**) to nearly 100 million.



- 26- They are still discovering new (**species - spices - special - spaces**) of animals and plants today in remote area.
- 27- Every animal and plant plays an important role in our (**intersystem - ecosystem - system - multisystem**).
- 28- We should try to protect the (**habits - inhabitants - habitats - inhibits**) where animals live.
- 29- Animals like polar bears are already finding it difficult to (**revive - refresh - survive - strive**).
- 30- If people continue to cut down forests, many animals and plants will become (**external - excellent - extinct - extinguish**).
- 31- Insects may (**come - become - play - income**) extinct if the crops they live or disappear. .
- 32- Many animals are being affected by climate (**share - challenge - change - charge**).
- 33- (**University - Biodiversity - Universe - Biology**) means the number of types of plants and animals in an area.
- 34- Every animal and plant (**eats - lives - plays - meets**) an important role in our ecosystem.
- 35- We could protect animals and plants which are (**out - of - on - in**) danger.
- 36- Many species are disappearing because of human (**actives - activities - abilities - plays**).
- 37- We should stop cutting (**up - down - out - in**) forests to provide more land for growing crops.
- 38- He's been a farmer for 20 years. Next year, he (**has been - will be - will have been - will have be**) a farmer for 21 years.
- 39- 40 percent of the Amazon (**will go - will have gone - has gone - will have been gone**) by 2115 if the earth's temperature goes up by 2C.
- 40- World food production has kept (**out - out of - up with - away**) population growth.
- 41- There's a large sign in the park which says, "Keep (**out - out of - off - on**) the grass.
- 42- There are many foods that can't be (**stared - stored - stirred - started**) for long enough.
- 43- Many farmers (**rise - raise - arise - arouse**) animals on farms.
- 44- We should produce enough food for the (**grow - grown - growing - grew**) population.
- 45- Emad was very tired but he kept (**up - off - on - with**) running as fast as he could.
- 46- I don't like troubles so I always keep (**out - out of - on - to**) them.
- 47- Recently, the country has reclaimed 400, 000 (**nectars - hectares - liters - centimeters**) of desert.
- 48- I'm not sure of my answer. The answer is (**certain - uncertain - curtain - certainty**).
- 49- By 2050, farmers will have used more (**high-quantity - high-tech - high quality - high- light**) land .
- 50- He works hard to (**eat - feed - food - flood**) his children.

#### 4) Rewrite :

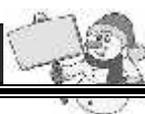
- 1- Today it is difficult for some animals to survive in such hot weather . (survival)
- 2- He has been a farmer for 20 years . ( Next year,..... )
- 3- it's six o'clock now. It will take me two hours to finish my hoemwork ( By eight o'clock.... )
- 4- Samia went to stay with her cousin in London six days ago . (By tomorrow evening,....)

#### 5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

- 1- If a farm is produce, it gives us a lot of food.
- 2- To make the desert good to use, we should proclaim it.
- 3- Farmers always rise animals on their farms.
- 4- Some films are not sitable for children to watch.

#### 6) Read the following passage, and then answer the questions :

During the last fifty years, psychologists have made us believe that differences between men and women are mainly due to the way we are brought up. According to this theory, women can be trained to do jobs that men traditionally do, and men can and should become more **domesticated**. They should be more communicative and emotional.



But two new books say that according to recent scientific research, gender differences exist because men's and women's brains work completely differently and their biological differences mean that they can never think or behave in the same way.

Because the two sides of a woman's brain are better connected, women are generally more talkative and more fluent than men. Women solve problems by talking about **them**, and in a crisis, they usually want to discuss the situation and their feelings, while men tend to interrupt and offer solutions, which isn't what women want at all.

**A) Answer the following questions :**

- 1- Why do men and women behave differently?
- 2- What does the underlined '**them**' refer to?
- 3 – How do women solve problems?
- 4 – Why are women more talkative and more fluent than men?

**B) Choose the correct answer:**

- 5 – Women are better with words because.....
  - a) they are biologically prepared to do that
  - b) they speak less than men
  - c) this is the way they are brought up
  - d) they like talking
- 6- The underlined word "**domesticated**" means .....
  - a) be a pet
  - b) taming an animal
  - c) dominant
  - d) to do work at home

### Writing

**9 Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) only of the following:**

- a) Climate change.
- b) Global warming.

### Translation

10) . A) Translate into Arabic :

- 1- By next year, Sahar will have finished her education.
- 2- Egypt has reclaimed 400, 000 hectares of desert to produce more food.

B) Translate into English :

1- يجب ان يعاقب كل مهمل على اهمالة.



### **THE IMPORTANCE OF WATER.      اهمية الماء**

**In the following lines, I'm going to write about the importance of water.** Indeed, this subject is one of the most important topics that deserves to be discussed. **Firstly** I would like to start with saying that every living thing needs water for its survival. Without water, plants, animals, and human beings perish. Plant, human and animal metabolism processes rely on water as a solvent and as a transporter of nutrients and oxygen throughout the body. Water is used for drinking, washing, cleaning and just about any activity we care to do. Without water, living is virtually impossible. When there is shortage of water such as when there is a drought, plants, animals and human beings perish. The affected land becomes dry. Nothing grows. It is important for us to know how precious water is. We ought not to waste it or pollute it by any means.



based on		physical	
based in		mental	
detective		legend	
crime		injury	
criminal		injured	
landlord		mystery	
landlady		mysterious	
scene	-	mysteriousness	
solve a crime		inherit	
clue	-	heir	
investigation		heiress	
investigate		inheritance	
character		murder	
fans		murderer	
hound		a means not an end	
pipe		evil	
government		illegal	
terror		root of all evil	
terrified		bite\bit\bitten	( )
terrifying		sting\stung\stung	( )
footprints		emotions	
Wild dog		feelings	
horror		flat mates	
damage	-	Victorian	من عصر الملكة فكتوريا
drown	( )	fictional detective	

## Definitions تعريفات

**1 - based on** مبنى على / مؤسس على

- using particular information or facts as a point from which to develop an idea, plan, etc.

**2 - crime** جريمة

- an illegal action that can be punished by law.

**3 - decorate** يزين

- to put new paint or paper on the walls of a room or building.

**4 - detective** محقق / مخبر سرى

- a police officer who works on crimes\ solves crimes.

**5 - fictional** خيالي

- not real.

**6 - landlady** مالكة الارض

- a woman that you rent a room or a house from.



**7 - scene** مشهد فى فيلم / مسرح الجريمة

- a short part of a play or film, when the events happen in one place.

**8 - expression** تعبير

- when you say what you think or show how you feel using words or actions.

**9 - face** وجه / يواجه

- the front of the head, where eyes, nose and mouth are.

**10 - hound** كلب صيد

- a dog used for hunting.

**11 - inherit** يرث

- to receive money, a house, etc. from someone who has died.

**12 - injury** جرح / اصابة

- physical harm that someone suffers in an accident or attack, or a particular examples of this.

**13 - investigate** يتحرى

- to try to find out about something, especially about a crime or accident.

**14 - legend** اسطورة

- an old, well-known story, often about brave people and their actions and adventures.

**15 - physical** بدنى

- relating to someone's body rather than their mind.

**16 - shoot** يطلق الرصاص

- to kill or injure someone with a gun.

**17 - terrified** مرعوب

- very frightened.

**Prepositions** حروف جر

terrified\afraid of  
laugh at  
steal from  
break into  
break down  
breakthrough  
shoot down

يسقط رميا بالرصاص

know about  
invented by  
on the first floor  
worried about  
a member of  
try to  
escape from

**Examples:**

- Sherlock Holmes was a fictional detective who was invented by Sir Arthur Conan Doyle.
- The brave policeman shot the terrorist down.
- A thief broke into my flat yesterday.



## Expressions تعبيرات

fictional detective  
wild dog  
make it hungry  
solve a crime

physical injuries  
found dead  
terrified expression  
dark colours

### Examples:

- Crombo is a famous Egyptian fictional detective.
- The criminal didn't feed the dog to make it hungry.
- He was found dead with a terrified expression on his face.
- A detective is a person who solves crimes.
- I don't like dark colours, I prefer bright ones.

## Language Notes

- **dog** كلب  
 ► **puppy** كلب صغير (جرو)  
 ► **hound** كلب صيد / يلاحق باسئلة  
Ex: Barking dogs seldom bite.  
Ex: Children like to play with puppies.  
Ex: A hound is a dog used for hunting.  
Ex: She is constantly hounded by reporters.

- **landlady** مالكة الارض / العقار  
 ► **landlord** مالكة الارض / العقار  
Ex: The landlady asked me for the room rent.  
Ex: The landlord of my flat is so greedy.

- **physical** بدني  
 ► **mental** عقلي  
Ex: He was found dead with no physical injuries.  
Ex: Meditation is a kind of mental exercise.

- **be based on** مبنى على / مؤسس على  
 ► **be based in** مقرة في ..  
Ex: This film is based on a real story.  
Ex: He was born in Cairo but he is based in Mansoura.





# Listening



## Sherlock Holmes

Sherlock Holmes was not a real person. He was a fictional detective who was invented by the writer, Sir Arthur Conan Doyle. However to many people he is very real. Some people believe that the character was based on a doctor who once taught the writer.

### READING

### READING

## The Hound Of The Baskervilles

**Sherlok Holmes** and Watson have a visit from a man called Dr Mortimer. He wants Holmes's advice before he goes to see his friend Sir Henry Baskervill. Sir Henry is the last member of the Baskerville family and is going to inherit the family home, Baskerville Hall, in the west of England. Mortimer is worried about Henry and tells Holmes and Watson an old legend about a wild dog. It is called the Hound of the Baskervilles and it killed Sir Hugo Baskerville hundreds of years earlier. It has also killed other members of the Baskerville family since then. The legend says that this dog will kill anyone called Baskerville.

**At first**, the detective laughs at the story, but then Dr Mortimer tells him about Henery's uncle, Sir Charles Baskerville, who has just been found dead in his garden. He had no physical injuries, but he had died with a terrified expression on his face. Also near his body there were footprints of an enormous dog. Suddenly, Holmes is very interested and goes to Baskerville Hall to investigate.

**Holmes and Watson** solve the crime. They discover that the criminal is called Stapleton, a cousin of the Baskervilles who wants to inherit the family home. He knows the legend of the hound, and trains a black dog to kill the first person it sees. He doesn't feed the dog because he wants to make it very hungry. However, when he sends it to kill Sir Henry Baskerville, Holmes and Watson are waiting. When they shoot the dog, everyone realizes that the hound is just an ordinary dog. Stapleton drowns as he is trying to escape.

### QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

#### 1- Why do Sherlock Holmes and Watson have a visit from Mortimer ?

-He wants Holmes's advice before he goes to see his friend Henry Baskerville who is going to inherit the family home .

#### 2- Who is sir Henry Baskerville ?

-He is the last member of the Baskerville family and he is going to inherit the family home .

#### 3- Where is the Baskervilles' family home ?

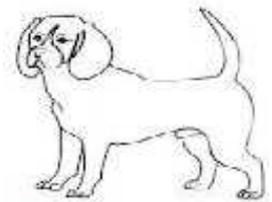
-It is in the west of England .

#### 4- Why is Mortimer worried about Henry? (or) What is the old legend ?

-There was an old legend about a wild dog, it is called the Hound of the Baskervilles and it killed some members of the Baskerville family. The legend says that this dog will kill anyone called Baskerville .



- 5- Why / When do Holmes and Watson become interested and decide to go to Baskerville Hall to investigate ?**  
 - When Dr. Mortimer tells them about Henry's uncle, Sir Charles Baskerville, who has just been found dead in his garden. He had no physical injuries but he had died with a terrified expression on his face. Also near his body, there were the footprints of an enormous dog .
- 6- Who is the real criminal? Why does he do that?  
 How do Holmes and Watson solve the crime?**  
 - The criminal is called Stapleton a cousin of the Baskervilles who wants to inherit the family home .
- 7- How does Stapleton commit his crime ?**  
 - By using a black dog trained to kill the first person it sees .
- 8- Why doesn't Stapleton feed the dog ?**  
 - To make it very hungry so that he may attack fiercely and kills the first person he sees
- 9- How does Stapleton meet his end ?**  
 - He drowns as he is trying to escape .
- 10- How does the hound meet its end ?**  
 - Holmes and Watson shoot it .
- 11- What does every one realise after shooting the dog ?**  
 - Everyone realizes that the hound is just an ordinary dog .
- 12- Was Stapleton a member of the Baskervilles family ?**  
 - Yes, he was a cousin of Baskervilles .
- 13- Did Holmes and Watson save Henry? How?**  
 - Yes, by shooting and killing the dog .
- 14- Do you think Dr Mortimer is a good friend to sir Henry ? Why ?**  
 - I think so, because he is worried about him and does his best to save him from the Baskervilles' wild dog .
- 15- Why do you think sir Charles Baskerville had terrified expression on his face?**  
 - Because he was attacked by the hungry dog before he died .
- 16- What's a detective's job?**  
 - A detective job is to solve crimes .
- 17- Why do you think Sherlock Holmes finds the Baskerville story funny when he first hears it?**  
 - Because he doesn't believe in legends like this. He is smart, intelligent and experienced detective .
- 18- Who was Sherolck Holmes?**  
 - He was not a real person. He was a fictional detective invented by the writer Sir Arthur Conan Doyle.
- 19- Do you think Egyptians believe in legends? Name a legend that you have heard?**  
 - Yes they do but not most of them do. The legend of Isis and Osiris was a well-known legend since the time of the pharaohs.



# ★ Grammar ★

## The Passive

### المبنى للمعلوم والمبنى للمجهول Active and Passive

#### Unit 13 لقد سبق شرحه بالتفصيل فى الوحدة الثالثة عشر

- 1- I arrived home after they had destroyed my furniture . (been )  
.....
- 2- Amany can play the piano very well . (be )  
.....
- 3- People speak English all over the world . (spoken )  
.....
- 4- The meeting has been postponed . (They )  
.....
- 5- I wasn't invited to the party . ( No one) ( They )  
.....
- 6- How do people learn languages ? ( How are )  
.....
- 7- Egypt is visited by millions of tourists every year . (Millions )  
.....
- 8- Nobody answered the questions . (The questions )  
.....
- 9- The car is being repaired . (The mechanic )  
.....
- 10- When I returned home I found that someone had stolen all my money . (been )  
.....
- 11- He has already received the five parcels. ( The five .... )  
.....
- 12- I can't do anything. ( Nothing..... )  
.....



# Homework



## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

Ali : .....(1)..... ?

Amr : No, I've never played games on the internet. I prefer to do real sports .

Ali : .....(2)..... ?

Amr : Tennis and squash .

Ali : .....(3)..... ?

Amr : I think I prefer tennis .

Ali : .....(4)..... ?

Amr : This weekend ? No, I'm busy, but we could play next weekend .

## 2) Write that you would say in each of the following situations :

1- Your friend has a happy reexpression on his face. Make a deduction.

2- You meet a foreigner who asks you to tell him the way to citadel.

3- You ask your friend about the price of his new shoes.

4- You want permission from your father to go to the cinema tonight.

## 3) Choose the correct answer :

1- The last ( **sense - scenery - scene - sight** ) in the film shows a man running into the desert .

2- I want to ( **dectorate - decorate - draw - tidy** ) my bedroom, but I can't decide what colour to choose .

3- It is a ( **murder - crime - cream - necessity** ) to steal things from shops or people .

4- Sherlock Holmes was a famous fictional ( **soldier - writer - detective - director** )

5- Sherlock Holmes ( **did - made - solved - answered** ) many mysteries .

6- Egypt ( **visits - visited - is visited - visit** ) by millions of tourists every year .

7- The pyramids ( **built - will be built - was built - were built** ) by ancient Egyptians .

8- Football ( **played - is playing - is played - plays** ) everywhere .

9- The hound is a ( **tame - wild - hunting -lazy** ) dog .

10- After his father's death, he ( **made - inherited -hired - lent** ) a lot of money because he was his only son .

11- My brother is worried ( **at - about - on - of** ) his exam results .

12- To ( **borrow - lend - hear - inherit** ) means to receive money or a house from someone who has died .

13- She is the owner of the house. She is( **landlord - landlady - landmark - tenant** )

14- It is a ( **fictional - real - false - detective** ) story. It aims at discovering facts about crimes .

15- She must have swum too far out and ( **fell - dropped - floated - drowned** ) .

16- This man has committed several crimes. He is a ( **soldier - criminal - officer - critic** )

17- Today's education is based ( **in - on - at - over** ) computer .

18- Sherlock Holmes wasn't a real person, he was a ( **true - fictional - funny - cheerful** ) one

19- He is a / an ( **fin - enemy - fan - fun** ) of Al-Zamalek Team. He watches all its matches .

20- A very old and popular story that may be based on real events is called a ( **novel - legend - mystery - crime** )

21- He died ( **at - of - on - with** ) a terrified expression on his face .

22- The female owner of a house is called ( **landlord - landlady - landmark - landslide** )

23- The police are still ( **searching - looking - investigating - investing** ) how the accident happened .

24- Holmes stories ( **read - are reading - have been read - have been reading** ) by millions of people .

25- The letter ( **wasn't written - hasn't written - isn't written - hasn't been written** ) yet .

26- It's not polite to laugh ( **in - with - at - to** ) old people .

27- The policeman ( **saved - shut - shoot - rescued** ) the terrorist and killed him .



- 28- The computer (**is used - was used - has been used - is being used**) at the moment .
- 29- Charles Dickens (**paused - imposed - posted - based**) his characters on people he knew .
- 30- A new film (**made - will make - is being made - making**) by a British company .
- 31- The children (**had told - had been told - has been told - was telling**) some stories before they slept .
- 32- After the car (**has been repaired - repaired - had repaired - had been repaired**), we drove away .
- 33- The government should help people with mental and (**physician - physical - physics - chemical**) disabilities.
- 34- The crime remained a (**monastery - mystery - monster - puzzle**), no one could understand or explain it .
- 35- (**Hound - Injury - Photo - Crime**) is a damage to your body .
- 36- The opposite of right is (**true - wrong - fact - accurate**) .
- 37- The baby is hungry. Go and (**eat - feed - meet - fill him**) .
- 38- Hundreds of crimes (**solved - solve - have solved - were solved**) by Holmes .
- 39- Sooner or later the thief (**will be - has been - is - will have**) arrested .
- 40- (**Did - Will - Do - Was**) the floor swept ?
- 41- (**Did - Will - Do - Has**) the floor been swept ?
- 42- (**Did - Will - Do - Has**) the floor be swept ?
- 43- Where has the money (**hidden - hide - been hidden - hiding**) ?
- 44- Don't worry, any problem (**can solve - can be solved - will solve - solve**) .
- 45- Ali (**didn't see - wasn't seen - hasn't seen - won't be seen**) at the party yesterday .
- 46- He was jailed for the (**favour - crime - charity - crown**) he committed last year .
- 47- (**Cream - crime - crowd - mystery**) is an illegal action that can be punished by law .
- 48- To (**dictate - cultivate - deduce - decorate**) is to put new paint or paper on the walls of a room or building .
- 49- A (**detective - dictator - deductive - delegation**) is a police officer whose job is to discover the person who is responsible for a crime .
- 50- A (**lady - land - landlady - landlord**) is a woman that you rent a room or house from .
- 51- A (**sense - scene - sight - view**) is a short part of a play or a film when the events happen in one place .
- 52- To (**solve - slave - enslave - sleeve**) is to find an answer to a problem .
- 53- You haven't seen my history book (**has it - haven't you - have you - hasn't it**) ?
- 54- The room is very dull. We should (**inherit - orbit - arrange - decorate**) it .
- 55- When the waiter brought me the (**bill - phone - menu - money**) . I was shocked at how much I had to pay .
- 56- This is (**bad - worse - the worst - worst**) film I've ever seen .

**4) Rewrite :**

- 1- They built the museum two hundred years ago. ( **was built** )  
.....
- 2- Someone has stolen my car . ( **My car.....** )  
.....
- 3- They took the car from the garage . ( **The car.....** )  
.....
- 4- I was interviewed yesterday . ( **An interviewer.....** )  
.....

**5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences :**

- 1- Crombo is a famous Egyptian cartoon deductive.
- 2- Sahar always has a smile on her arm.
- 3- A pound is a hunting dog.
- 4- To hire is to get money and other things when someone dies.
- 5- When the children saw the lion out of its cage, they were terrific.



- 6- The last seen in the film shows a man running into the desert.  
 7- A criminal committed a crime yesterday.  
 8- Mai has decided to decorate her room. She will change the old wallpaper.  
 9- There is water and broken glass next to the killed man.  
 10- By 2050, the pollution of the world will have grown to about nine billion.

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Horoscopes are charts created by astrologers. A definition of a horoscope is: the illustration of the position of the sun, moon, and planets from a given location on earth, usually at birth. Which simply means, where everything in the universe was in relation to everything else when you were born. Everyone has an astrological sign. There are 12 in all. They are called the "signs of the zodiac". Each sign represents a set of human characteristics. **They** deal with certain area of a person's life, such as marriage, health, work, travel, and death. Astrologers believe that the position of the objects in the sky when you were born and their movements reflect the person's character and destiny. The horoscope also is divided into 12 houses. Unlike the zodiacal signs, which represent the annual cycle of the sun, the house represent the 24 hours of a day of the Earth's daily rotation. Astrologers make predictions by studying the position of the objects with all of the 12 signs and of the 12 houses.

**A) Give short answers to the following questions:**

1. What is a horoscope?
2. What do zodiac signs represent?
3. How can astrologers make predictions using horoscopes?
4. Do you believe in horoscopes? Why? Why not?

**B) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

4. Horoscopes relate everything in the universe with the person's .....  
 a. date of birth    b. place of birth    c. date of death    d. place of death
- 5- The underlined word '**They**' refers to the.....  
 a. horoscopes    b. astrologers    c. houses    d. signs

**E- Writing**

**9) Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) only of the following:**

- a) Climate change.
- b) Global warming.

**F) Translate :**

**10). A) Translate into Arabic :**

- 1- A detective is a person who works on mysterious crimes.
- 2- The history of the ancient Egyptians was full of legends and myths.

**B) Translate into English :**

1 -- لقد وجد مقتولا بشقطة وبجوار ماء مسكوب وزجاج مكسور.



**A cleaner world**

form /	enforce /
noise	enforcement /
noisy	authorities
noisily	define
annoy	definition
annoyance	fight /
annoying	brakes
annoyed	prevent
pollution	prevention
polluted	illuminate
pollutants	illumination
voice	artificial
sound	natural
traffic	astronomers
neighbour	astronomer
mind	bright
alarm	brightness
situation	brightly
cause /	light - lit- lit /
hearing	towers
sight	exhausted /
common	exhausting /
in common	exhaustion /
horn	entertainment
reduce	entertain
reduction	company /
level	formal
politely	informal
laws	bother
complaint	response
complain	respond /
parks	assistant
gardens	nocturnal



## Definitions تعريفات

**1 - alarm** جهاز انذار

- something such as a bell, loud noise, or light that warns.

**2 - put up with** يتحمل / يطيق

- accept a bad situation without complaining.

**3 - cause** يسبب

- to make something happen.

**4 - increase** يزيد

- to become larger or to make something larger.

**5 - stress** توتر / ضغط

- continuous feelings of worry about your work or personal life that prevent you from relaxation.

**6 - burglar** لص منازل

- someone who goes into buildings in order to steal things.

**7 - go off** ينطلق

- make a loud noise; start working.

**8 - horns** آلات تنبيه / ابواق / كلاكسات

- the things in a car that you push to make a sound as a warning.

**9 - authorities** سلطات

- organizations that make official decisions and control.

**10 - prevent** يمنع

- to stop it.

**11 - reduce** يقلل

- to lessen or get smaller.

**12 - illuminate** ينير

- to make something lighter.

**13 - leisure facilities** وسائل ترفيهية

- Things we use during our free time.

**14 - artificial** صناعي

- something made by people\ not natural.

**15 - astronomers** علماء فلك

- scientists who study the stars and other space objects.

**16 - nocturnal** حيوان او طائر ليلي

- birds and animals that come out at night.



## Prepositions      حروف جر

go off fly through fly around difficult for difficult to problem....with crash into at least keep....on put up with	complain about complain to complain of shine on shine up shine down turn\switch on turn\ switch off impossible for stop....from
--	--

### Examples:

- My clock alarm always goes off at six o'clock.
- Nocturnal animals and birds come out at night.
- I can't put up with more pressure on me.
- I want to complain to the manager about the bad service here.
- Street light should shine down not up.
- What is the problem with your car.

## Expressions      تعبيرات

water pollution air pollution light pollution audio pollution visual pollution noise pollution	leisure facilities nocturnal animals lose his way get dark burglar alarm car alarm
---	---

### Examples:

- The most common forms of pollution are air and water pollution.
- Bats and owls are nocturnal animals.
- It is very easy to lose your way in crowded cities.
- The burglar could steal the shop because the burglar alarm was off.
- Car alarms protect your cars from being stolen.

## Get – got – got

### 1- get = become

*Ex: Light pollution is getting worse.*

### 2- get = buy

*Ex: I'm going to the shop to get some bread.*

### 3- get = catch

*Ex: I'm going to get the 11.30 train to Cairo.*

### 3- get = understand

*Ex: Do you get what I mean?*

### 3- get = arrive

*Ex: I got to school very late yesterday.*





## Listening

**Presenter** : Welcome to Science for Life. With us in the studio today is a scientist. Dr Nihal Hany. Thank you for coming.

**DR NIHAL HANY** : Thank you for **having me**.

**Presenter** : The two forms of pollution we usually hear about are air and water pollution, but you're going to talk about a very different kind of pollution, aren't you?

**DR NIHAL HANY** : Yes, that's right. I'm going to talk about **noise pollution**.

**Presenter** : **So how do you define noise pollution?**

**DR NIHAL HANY**: Noise pollution is simply a **sound** that we do not want to **hear**. This can be the sound of traffic in the street when we're trying to sleep, or loud noises coming from a neighbour's house when we're watching TV.

**Presenter** : **Is noise pollution always loud?**

**DR NIHAL HANY** : It isn't always very loud, but it's always louder than we want to hear. We all like music, but if it's very loud late at night, it can be extremely annoying. Often it isn't only the noise itself that is the problem, it's the time of day when we hear it or how long we hear the noise for. Nobody minds a car alarm **going off** for a few seconds, but if a car alarm goes off every ten minutes, it can be very difficult to **put up with**.

**Presenter** : **And is noise pollution a problem?**

**DR NIHAL HANY** : It can be. In really bad situations, it can cause hearing problems. But more often it can increase **levels of stress** in society.

**Presenter** : **What forms of noise pollution do most people complain about?**

**DR NIHAL HANY** : Probably the most **common** examples are noises from neighbours – people shouting or children playing **noisily** – and traffic in the street. People don't like hearing **car horns** late at night. **Burglar alarms** or car alarms often **go off** at night. And we don't like hearing voices talking loudly on mobile phones.

**Presenter** : **But what can we do about unwanted noise?**

**DR NIHAL HANY**: There isn't much anyone can do about this. In some countries, there are laws to stop people using their car horns late at night, but noise laws are difficult to **enforce**. And at some airports, they sometimes **reduce** the number of planes landing and taking off at night.

**Presenter** : **So, if people can't put up with this kind of noise, what should they do?**

**DR NIHAL HANY** : It may be possible to complain to the **authorities**, but this doesn't always succeed.

**Presenter** : **So do you think they should live somewhere else?**

**DR NIHAL HANY** : Sometimes this is the only answer.



## READING

### Light Pollution

## READING

The two forms of pollution that we hear about more often are air and water pollution. We know that these damage the environment and should be **prevented** or at least **reduced**. But there is another kind of pollution which is getting worse and which we do not hear much about. This is **light pollution**.

We use **artificial lights** in our homes, in our cities to keep us safe at night, and to **illuminate** shops, offices and **leisure facilities**. Light pollution is when artificial light shines into someone's bedroom window and stops them from sleeping is a good example.

**Another form** of light pollution is the **orange light** which can be seen over towns and cities at night. Because of this , it never gets dark in some places. This makes it impossible for us to see night sky and for **astronomers** to study the stars. What is more important, this orange light can affect the lives of **nocturnal birds** and animals, and even be a **threat** to their **survival**.

**So** what can we do to **prevent** or **reduce** light pollution? In our homes and work places, we should turn off lights that we do not need and make sure that our lights are only as powerful as they need to be. In some modern buildings, lights come only when there are people in a room. We should also make sure that outside lights **shine** only **on** places that need to be illuminated and that street lights **shine down** and not **up**.

**When** birds fly through an area which is very **brightly** lit at night, they can easily lose their way. They sometimes crash into **towers** and other buildings, or **fly round** them until they are **exhausted**.

## QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

### 1- What is light pollution?

-It is when artificial light shines on areas that we do not want to illuminate.

### 2- Give examples of light pollution?

- Artificial lights in our homes, street lights which shines into someone's bedroom window and the orange light which can be seen over towns and cities at night.

### 3- What is the problem with the orange light over towns and cities?

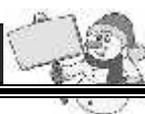
- The light stops us from seeing the night sky and stops astronomers from studying the stars. Besides, this orange light can affect the lives of nocturnal birds and animals.

### 4- How do you think light pollution affects nocturnal birds and animals?

- It affects their normal natural routines, sometimes they do not know if it is night time or not.

### 5- How can we reduce light pollution?

- Switching off the lights we do not need; making sure we only illuminate areas that we need to be illuminated; making street lights shine down not up.



**6- What parts of towns and cities should be illuminated at night and which should not?**

- Schools, parks and gardens do not need to be illuminated at night if they are not used at night. The other places should be illuminated because people use them at night.

**7- Do you think that people should worry about light pollution? Why? Why not?**

- Yes, because it can affect their life and health.

**8- How would your life be different if there were no lights at night?**

- It would be a little bit difficult. Light guides us in the dark.

**9- Are there any things in your life that might be better without lights?**

- Yes, sleeping and relaxing.

**10- Do you agree that pollution is the result of modern life? Why? Why not?**

- Yes, I agree. Because modern life brought with it all kinds of pollution such as noise pollution, light pollution visual and audio pollution.

**17- Why do you think birds lose their way when buildings are brightly lit?**

- They may think a bright building is the sun or a bright area of land. They may be attracted to bright lights and not realize they are buildings until it's too late.

**16 - What can we do to protect nocturnal birds and animals from light pollution?**

- We could attach flags etc. to brightly lit buildings to warn and scare them away.

**Making complaints****تقديم الشكاوى****☛ Making complaints:**

- I'm sorry to bother you but.....
- I'd like to make a complaint.
- .....speak to the manager.

**☛ Polite responses**

- I do apologise. I'll make sure.....
- I'm sorry you had to come round
- I'm afraid he is out at the moment.



# ★ Grammar ★

## الإسماء التي تعد والإسماء التي لا تعد countable and uncountable nouns

### أولا : الإسماء التي تعد :

هي الإسماء التي يمكن عدّها وإضا s لها والمفرد منها يسبق بـ a/an  
a book – books      an apple – apples      a wife – wives.

### ثانيا : الإسماء التي لا تعد :

الإسماء التي لا تعد لا يضاف لها s في الجمع وهي تعامل معاملة المفرد.  
( الكميات واللغات و لإسماء المجردة والمواد الدراسية ووجبات الطعام وشهور السنة.... )  
**water, meat, rice, oil, flour, coffee, tea, love, freedom, glass, luggage, baggage, fun, hair, furniture, cheese, iron, petrol, sugar, knowledge, soup, soap, butter, money education, machinery, silver, salt, sand, milk, gold, copper, English, lunch, love.**

Ex: Water is very important in life.

Ex: Meat is a delicious food.

Ex: Love is blind.

Ex: Your luggage is very heavy.

### ملاحظات عامة على الإسماء التي تعد والإسماء التي لا تعد

(1) بعض الكلمات لها نفس التكوين في المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفعل حسب المعنى أو المقصد.

**sheep - a sheep      deer - a deer      fish - a fish**

Ex: A sheep is grazing in the field.

Ex: Some sheep were grazing in the field.

(2) بعض الأسماء تنتهي بـ s في المفرد والجمع ويصرف معها الفعل حسب المقصد أيضاً.

**crossroads - means - series - species - works.**

Ex: The bus is a means of public transport.

Ex: Buses are means of public transport

(3) هناك كلمات شكلها جمع وتنتهي بـ s ولكنها تتبع بفعل مفرد.

**billiards, dominoes, cards, news, physics, economics, statistics, classics, gymnastics, athletics, measles, maths, politics, civics, savings, valuables**

Ex: Your news is not correct, he is still alive.

Ex: Physics is a very difficult subject.

Ex: Athletics is my favourite sport.

Ex: Dominoes is a popular game in Egypt.

(4) هناك أسماء دائماً في صيغة الجمع وتنتهي بـ s ويتبعها فعل جمع.

**clothes, goods, surroundings, stairs, outskirts, customs, thanks, valuables**

Ex: Clothes are very expensive in Italy.

Ex: The stairs of the school are not clean.

(5) هناك أسماء دائماً في صيغة الجمع ولا تنتهي بـ s نها تتبع بفعل جمع.

**police, people, cattle**

Ex: Police have the authority to arrest criminals and thieves.

Ex: There are of people in the party.

Ex: Cattle are useful animals.

(6) هناك أسماء تشير الي مجموعة من الناس ويمكن أن يتبعها فعل مفرد أو جمع حسب المعنى.

**family, army, government, team, union, press, council, crowd, staff, majority, minority, crew, , public, company**

Ex: My family is a very big family. ( )

Ex: My family are very happy. ( )



(7) هناك أسماء تتكون من جزئين ( فردتين ) وتنتهى بـ s يتبعها فعل جمع دائماً.  
**glasses, jeans, pants, scissors, shorts, pyjamas, shoes, gloves, pliers  
 spectacles, scales, tweezers, binoculars, tongs**

Ex: These gloves are expensive.

Ex: Scissors have sharp blades.

a pair of فانها تصبح مفرد.

Ex: A pair of new shoes was my present on my last birthday.

(8) **the** قبل صفات معينة تتحول الصفة إلى اسم جمع:

∧ **the poor, the rich, the disabled, the deaf, the blind, the dumb, the sick, the dead  
 the young, the old, the homeless, the elderly, the unemployed + plural verb**

Ex: The poor are in need of our help. = Poor people are in need of our help.

(9) الأسماء التي لا تعد إذا سبقت باداة تجزئة فاننا هنا نتعامل مع اداة التجزئة وهي تعد مثل:

- a piece of meat, advice, news
- a tube of toothpaste, ointment
- a packet of biscuits
- a glass of water, juice
- a bottle of water, oil
- a reel of string
- a drop of water, rain
- a box of matches
- a bar of chocolate, soap
- a loaf of bread
- a sheet of paper
- a jar of jam, honey
- a spoonful of sugar, tea
- a slice of meat
- a grain of salt, sand

Ex: There is a loaf of bread on the table.

Ex: loaves of bread were thrown on the floor.

(10) هناك أسماء يتوقف صيغة المفرد والجمع فيها على معناها.

لا يعد Uncountable	يعد Countable
paper	a paper جريدة
glass	a glass
coffee قهوة	a coffee فنجان قهوة
ice يد	an ice ايس كريم
iron حديد	an iron
time -	a time
business	a business
light	a light
orange	an orange
chicken	chickens طيور الدجاج
experience	an experience
room	a room
noise	a noise
space	a space

Ex: Coffee is drunk everywhere in the world.

Ex: Three coffees are not enough for me a day.

Ex: As there was no room to sit, I had to stand up all the show.

Ex: The tourist reserved a room in a hotel in the city centre.



**much, a little, a little****many, a few, few**

(11)

Ex: How many people are there in the team?

Ex: How much water do you drink a day?

Ex: How many times do you go to the cinema?

Ex: How much time do you want to answer this question?

(12) هناك كلمات جمعها شاذ وتجمع بتغيير نهايات الاحرف مثل.

Singular	Plural
<b>datum</b>	<b>data</b>
<b>medium</b>	<b>media</b>
<b>criterion</b>	<b>criteria</b>
<b>phenomenon</b>	<b>phenomena</b>
<b>crisis</b>	<b>crises</b>
<b>oasis</b>	<b>oases</b>
<b>woman</b>	<b>women</b>
<b>man</b>	<b>men</b>
<b>tooth</b>	<b>teeth</b>
<b>foot</b>	<b>feet</b>
<b>goose</b>	<b>geese</b>
<b>child</b>	<b>children</b>
<b>mouse</b>	<b>mice</b>
<b>ox</b>	<b>oxen</b>

Ex: Three children were killed in an accident yesterday.

Ex: I went to the dentist as my teeth were hurting.



# Homework



## 1) Finish the following dialogue:

- Manal** : Excuse me sir.  
**Sales assistant** : .....(1)..... ?  
**Manal** : I bought this dress from here and I'd like to return it, please.  
**Sales assistant** : .....(2).....?  
**Manal** : Last week.  
**Sales assistant** : ..... (3).....?  
**Manal** : It shrank when I washed it.  
**Sales assistant** : Would you like to have another one?  
**Manal** : Of course.....(4).....

## 2) Write that you would say in each of the following situations :

- 1- Your neighbour's car alarm is going off. You visit their flat to tell them.
- 2- You bought a CD from a shop and it is damaged. You want to complain to the shop assistant.
- 3- You forgot to return a book that you borrowed from a friend. He\She comes round to your house to get it.
- 4- You are in a shop and you knock over a glass and it breaks. You see the shop assistant.

## 3) Choose the correct answer :-

- 1- The ( **regular - burglar - triangular - burger** ) stole the jewels from that shop.
- 2- He thinks the ( **authors - bothers - thunders - authorities** ) should put more lights in the park because it is dangerous at night.
- 3- Cars ( **cause - accuse - cease - because** ) both air and noise pollution.
- 4- I think that cars should not press their ( **corns - hens - horns - harms** ) at night or people cannot sleep.
- 5- The teacher is very happy because there has been an ( **decrease - increase - breathe - growth** ) in the number of students who have passed the test.
- 6- Students often feel ( **dress - press - brass- stress** ) when they have exams.
- 7- Ali does not usually sleep very well because his neighbour's car alarm often ( **gets rid of - goes off - gets up - puts up with** ) in the middle of the night.
- 8- His neighbor has asked him to ( **get rid of - go off - get up - put up with** ) the problem until his car alarm is mended.
- 9- The neighbor promised to ( **get rid of - go off - get up - put up with** ) the car if the problem continues.
- 10- His grandmother always drinks a ( **cup - jar - bottle - packet** ) of tea with her food.
- 11- Would you like ( **a - an - some - many** ) sugar with your coffee.
- 12- How many ( **tins - bottles - boxes - jars** ) of vegetables do you have in your cupboard.
- 13- Can you pass me the ( **bar - far - jar - tar** ) of honey please.
- 14- I'm not very hungry because I've just eaten a ( **cup- bottle - jar - piece** ) of cake.
- 15- Don't forget to buy a ( **bottle - jar - spoon - cup** ) of cola.
- 16- Magda does not like airports because there is always a lot of ( **noises - noise - a noise - the noise** )
- 17- Many people in Europe have light brown ( **hairs - hair - hairy - the hairs** ).
- 18- Some animals are ( **naughty - national - nocturnal - miserable** ), so you only see them at night.
- 19- There are very good leisure ( **facilities - guides - hectares - horns** ) in my city.
- 20- As soon as the burglar went into the park that night, an alarm ( **went to - went up - went in - went off** ).
- 21- They put lights on the castle to ( **prevent - bright - dark - illuminate** ) it at night.
- 22- What is the ( **case - cause - way - reason** ) of air pollution?



- 23- ( **The chicken - Chickens - Chicken - Some chickens** ) is usually on the menu of that restaurant.
- 24- Owls and bats are ( **nectar - hectare - nocturnal - morning** ) animals
- 25- I can't( **put on - put off - put away - put up with** ) those silly girls.
- 26- Drivers are not allowed to use their cars ( **hens - horns - tyres - corns** ) in this area.
- 27- The tourist complaint to the ( **authors - ushers - authorities - burglars** ) about being treated badly.
- 28- Noise pollution is a noise we don't want to ( **see - touch - hear - smell** ).
- 29- Air and water pollution are two ( **firms - farms - forms - frames** ) of pollution.
- 30- At some airports, they sometimes reduce the ( **amount - number - quantity - sum** ) of planes landing and taking off at night.
- 31- How ( **many - much - long - often** ) money do you have?
- 32- How ( **many - much - long - often** ) pounds \ dollars \ Euros do you have?
- 33- There are too ( **many - much - little - a lot** ) cars on the roads yesterday.
- 34- We have so many things to do and so ( **few - little - a - fewer** ) time left.
- 35- The news you gave me ( **is - are - have - has** ) not correct.
- 36- How ( **many - much - long - often** ) ice cubes do you want?
- 37- If we ( **eliminate - illuminate - darken - blacken** ) something, we make it lighter.
- 38- We usually use ( **pleasure - treasure - leisure - pressure** ) facilities during our free time.
- 39- ( **Archaeologists - Astronauts - Astronomers - Actors** ) are people who studies stars and planets.
- 40- Nocturnal birds and animals come out ( **at night - in the morning - in the afternoon - during the day** )
- 41- People always use ( **natural - artificial - nocturnal - facial** ) lights on wedding parties.
- 42- The one can ( **miss - loss - lose - on** ) his way in big cities.
- 43- Stop ( **brothering - gathering - bothering - breathing** ) me. I cannot put up with it.
- 44- My parents ( **put - kept - got - shot** ) me a laptop for my birthday.
- 45- Artificial light shines ( **of - at - in - on** ) areas that we do not want to illuminate.
- 46- Noise pollution can cause ( **sight - smell - hearing - touch** ) problems.
- 47- People don't like hearing voices talking loudly ( **of - at - in - on** ) mobile phones.
- 48- There isn't ( **much - many - few - any** ) anyone can do about the noise of traffic.
- 49- The customers complaint ( **for - of - on - to** ) the manger of the restaurant.
- 50- How ( **much - many - few - long** ) coffees do you drink a day?
- 51- How ( **much - many - few - long** ) times do you go to the cinema?
- 52- Athletics ( **is - are - has - have** ) my favourite sport.
- 53- I went to the pharmacy to buy a ( **jar - cup- tube - slice** ) of toothpaste.
- 54- My grandfather always gives me ( **packets - jars - slices - pieces** ) of advice.

4) Rewrite the following sentences using the words in brackets to give the same meaning.

- 1- The lake is very pretty, but it was made by people. ( **artificial** )
- .....
- 2- The police stopped the man from going into the building. ( **prevent** )
- .....
- 3- They plan to make smaller the number of cars going into the city centre each day. ( **reduce** )
- .....
- 4- That school needs some lights to make the playground lighter at night. ( **illuminate** )
- .....
- 5- This is a bird that only comes out at night. ( **nocturnal** )
- .....



6- There's not much sugar left in the container.

(a little)

7- The noise in that room is so loud.

(a lot of)

**5) Find and correct the mistakes in each of the following sentences:**

- 1- Air and water pollution should be prevented or at last reduced.
- 2- The guest thanked the presenter for being him in the programme.
- 3- Air pollution is a sound that we do not want to hear.
- 4- Noise pollution can cause sight problems.
- 5- Burgers alarms protect cars from stealing.
- 6- Drivers should not use their cars horns at night. They are annoying.
- 7- If you can't put up with your neighbours's noise, you can complain to the authors.
- 9- Air and water pollution are two farms of pollution.
- 10- Noise pollution is when artificial light shines into someone's bedroom window and stops them from sleeping.
- 11- Cities and towns are always covered with green light at night.
- 12- Bats and awls are nutral animals. They come out at night.
- 13- In festivals, the sky is always eliminated by fireworks.
- 14- Bright lights at night cause many birds to miss their way.
- 15- Astronauts are people who studies stars.
- 16- We should do our best to deduce all kinds of pollution.
- 17- A wig is an artifact hair.
- 18- Street lights should chain down not up.
- 19- We should do sure that lights shine only on places that need to be illuminated.
- 20- There are a lot of leather facilities in my town.
- 21- Light pollution threatens the survive of nocturnal birds.
- 22- My neighbor was sorry that I had to come around.
- 23- I'm sorry to brother you but I had a complaint.
- 24- If the service in this restaurant is not good, you can do a complaint.
- 25- The most comma forms of pollution are air and water pollution.
- 26- People don't like sounds talking loudly on mobile phones.
- 27- The noises of neighbours are examples of light pollution.
- 28- Noise pollution can increase the levels of press in society.
- 29- I can't gep up with the repeated car alarms.
- 30- The problem of light pollution is going worse.

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Bats are wild animals. They are the only mammals that are able to fly. Bats can be found almost anywhere in the whole world except in very cold or very hot countries. They are mostly found in tropical countries. Although we normally think of bats as animals that live in caves, they actually prefer trees as their home. In order not to be seen, they use their skin as camouflage. This helps them to make homes under big trees or under bark of trees. They like caves too, as they find it a suitably dark place to sleep during the day. Bats are **nocturnal** animals. This means that they rest by day and hunt at night. Most bats have very good eyesight and a keen sense of smell. A bat can see better in the dark than most of us do! A bat's diet includes fruits, nectar, meat from small



animals like frogs and fish as well as insects. Their feeding habits actually help plants and trees to reproduce. The seeds from the fruits they eat are dropped onto the ground, which in turn grow into new plants. Bats are therefore quite useful animals.

**A- Answer the following questions:**

- 1- Where do not bats live?
- 2- What do bats do in order not to be seen?
- 3- What do bats feed on\live on?
- 4- How are bats useful animals?

**B- Choose the correct answer:**

- 4- The word '**nocturnal**' means.....animals.  
a) day                      b) morning                      c) night                      d) afternoon
- 5- Except for bats, mammals.....  
a) can't bear                      b) can't fly                      c) can't eat                      d) can't sleep

### **E- Writing**

**9) Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) only of the following:**

- a) Pollution and its effects on us.
- b) Visual and audio pollution.

### **F- Translation**

**10) A) Translate into Arabic :**

- 1- It is necessary to turn off any lights that are not needed.
- 2- Pollution is one of the most serious problems that threaten us.

**B) Translate into English :**

1- للتلوث انواع عدة منها التلوث السمعى والتلوث البصرى والتلوث الفكرى.



**REVIEW F**

planet

increasing pollution

become extinct

survive /

climate

education

take for granted

mostly

society

lawyers

get rid of

save money

low-energy

light bulbs

warm water

hot water

charity /

opportunity

reforms

changes

improvements

public education

compulsory education

free /

technology

equal

subjects

recycle

recycled

recycling

cause

cut down

sheet of paper

share...with

**Definitions تعريفات****1 - compulsory** اجبارى

- must be done because of a rule or law.

**2 - educated** متعلم / مثقف

- an educated person has a high standard of knowledge and education.

**3 - equal** مساوى

- the same size, value, amount, etc.

**4 - improvement** تحسن

- when something becomes better than it was.

**5 - opportunity** فرصة

- a chance to do something.

**6 - reform** يصلح / يقوم (نظام او سلوك)

- change that is made to a political or legal system in order to make it fairer or more effective.

**6 - (take for) granted** يسلم به

- to believe that something is true without making sure.



# READING

## Saving Our Planet

We hear a lot about the damage that is being caused to the earth: our cars and factories increase pollution: forests are being cut down so that farmers can have more land to grow food for the world's increasing population; and we are not doing enough to prevent animal and plant species from becoming extinct. So how can we make sure our planet **survives**? Here are some things everyone can do which will also save us money.

**Firstly**, we should use less energy. This will slow climate change and save money. We could start by turning off lights, computers and other machines in our homes when we are not using them. We could also use **low-energy light bulbs** and wash our clothes in warm (not hot) water.

**Next**, we should think about what we use and what we **get rid of**. Here are a few simple ideas that will save money as well as the environment. Use both sides of sheets of paper in a computer printer; if you get a new mobile phone, give your old one to a **charity to recycle**; take newspapers, bottles and tins to a **recycling centre**. A lot of food that we buy is wasted: only buy what you need.

**Finally**, think about how you travel. Sometimes, you can make a phone call or send an e-mail instead of making a journey. The cheapest way of getting about is to **share** a car with a friend.

**These** are small things, but if everyone **follows** this **advice**, the earth will be a healthier, safe place.

## QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

### 1- Why are forests cut down?

- So that farmers can have more land to grow food for the world's increasing population.

### 2- How can we make sure our planet survives?

- Firstly, we should use less energy. Next, we should think about what we use and what we get rid of. Finally, we should think about how we travel.

### 3- How can we save energy \ use less energy?

By switching off all the lights we don't need. We can also use low-energy light bulbs.

### 4- How can we slow climate change?

- By reducing pollution.

### 5- How can we save money and the environment?

- By using both sides of sheets of paper in a computer printer. Give your old mobile to charity to recycle it. Take newspapers, bottles and tins to a recycling centre.



## EXTRA READING

### Education Today And On The Past

**Today** most children have an education, but we should not **take this for granted**. Things were very different in the past, when only a small number of children went to school. These were mostly the children of important people in society and they became lawyers or doctors. At that time, reading, writing and mathematics were most important subjects. Nearly everywhere, it was only boys who were given an education, while girls stayed at home with their mothers and learned to cook and look after the home. The children of poor people did not have the **opportunity** of going to school and many of them started work at a very young age.

**Since then**, there have been many **reforms** in education. Some people still pay for their children to go to school, but the greatest changes and improvements have been in public education. **Compulsory education**, which is free to everyone, usually starts between the ages of four and six and continues until children are sixteen or eighteen. Reading, writing and mathematics are still the most important subjects, but other subjects, such as science and technology, are also important for people growing up in the modern world. In modern societies, boys and girls now have **equal opportunities** in education.

**One of** the greatest changes has been to higher education. In some countries between 40% and 60% of students aged 18 and over now go to university, but this is not usually **free**. In most places parents have to pay for their children's higher education.

### QUESTIONS & ANSWERS

- 1- **What kind of work did educated people do in the past?**  
- They were lawyers or doctors.
- 2- **At what age does compulsory education usually begin?**  
- It usually starts between the ages of 4 and 6.
- 3- **Which five school subjects are most important today?**  
- They are reading, writing, mathematics, science and technology.
- 4- **How has education for people over 18 and over changed in modern times?**  
- Students aged 18 and over now go to university.
- 5- **What did girls learn in the past?**  
- They learned to cook and look after the home.
- 6- **Why did children of poor family start work at a very young age?**  
- Because they did not have the opportunity of going to school.
- 7- **For whom is compulsory education?**  
- It is free everywhere.



**REVISION F**

(Workbook pages 105- 108)

**A. Language Functions****1) Finish the following dialogue:**

Man : I'm sorry to bother you. I'd like to make a complaint.

Hotel office : 1).....?

Man : The window in my room won't close.

Hotel office : 2)..... I'll ask someone to repair it for you this afternoon.

Man : 3).....?

Hotel office : OK, I'll see if someone can visit your room now.

Man : When do you think they will have repaired it? I'd like to go out in thirty minutes.

Hotel office : 4).....

Man : Before I go out? Thank you.

**2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

- Some new friends phone you to say that they can't find your house and they don't know where they are. Ask your mother for advice.
- A person phones you and asks to speak to your father He is not here.
- Your cousins phone you and say that they have missed the train to Cairo. Suggest the bus.
- You make a complaint at a shop but the assistant cannot help you. You want to speak to the manager.

**B. Vocabulary and Structure****3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The computers .....used by all the children in the school.

- a) will                      b) will be                      c) will have                      d) have

2. Mona can't play tennis at 9.30 because she won't .....her homework by then.

- a) have finished                      b) be finished                      c) finished                      d) finishing

3. The museum..... visited by thousands of people this year.

- a) was been                      b) has been                      c) has                      d) have

4. You can't use classroom 2 because it .....redecorated.

- a) is being                      b) being                      c) was been                      d) will have

5. Magda does not like airports because there is always a lot of .....

- a) noises                      b) noise                      c) a noise                      d) the noise

6. Many people in Europe have light brown .....

- a) hairs                      b) hair                      c) hairy                      d) the hairs

7. Please can you go to the shops and buy a .....of honey.

- a) piece                      b) cup                      c) jar                      d) plate

8. The story is not real, it is.....

- a) fact                      b) fax                      c) financial                      d) fictional

9. The baby has a very happy..... on his face'

- a) ecosystem                      b) expression                      c) emotions                      d) effect

10. When the lion ran towards me, I felt.....

- a) terrified                      b) annoying                      c) compulsory                      d) cracked

11. Some animals are ....., so you only see them at night.

- a) naughty                      b) national                      c) nocturnal                      d) miserable

12. There are very good leisure .....in my city, so I am never bored.

- a) facilities                      b) guides                      c) hectares                      d) horns



**4) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning.**

1. My sister walks so quickly that I cannot walk as quickly as her. (keep up with)

2. Don't walk on the grass in the park. (keep off)

3. I a e t when I hear alarms at night. (go off)

4. A hat time does your train arrive in Cairo? (get)

**5. Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

1. The story is about a criminal that happened in London 100 years ago.

2. An important machine was given from a factory.

3. The owner of the factory asked an astronomer to find who had taken it.

4. The fiction who took the machine was found and sent to prison.

**A. Reading Comprehension and the set books**

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

Does the sound of an insect in your room bother you? There are more than 900,000 kinds of insects, but scientists think that only about 80 percent of the world's species have been studied. In the future, we will probably find many more. So before you get rid of that annoying insect in your room, remember that they can play an important part in our ecosystem. They help plants to grow, they remove natural rubbish and they are food for many birds and animals.

Some scientists think that insects are healthy to eat. They think that more and more people will have started to eat insects by the time your grandchildren are adults. Some insects are annoying and some are dangerous, but other insects may be more useful than you realize!

**1. What percent of insect species do scientists not know about?**

**2. What will scientists study more of in the future?**

**3. In what ways can insects help the ecosystem?**

**4. Why do you think people might eat insects in the future?**

**5. What do many people do with insects that are annoying?**

a. They get rid of them .

b. They eat them.

c. They put them in a room .

d. They give them to their grandchildren

**6. When do some scientists think that more people will eat insects?**

a. in about ten years

b. in about 20 years

c. in about 60-70 years

d. in about 200 years

**7) Answer only FOUR (4) of the following questions:**

1. What will happen to Baskerville Hall if all the Baskervilles die?

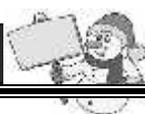
2. What has killed members of the Baskerville family in the past?

3. Why do you think Sherlock Holmes becomes interested in Dr Mortimer's story?

4. Do you think it is possible to train a dog like Stapleton did in the story?

5. Do you think that Holmes and Watson were right to shoot the dog?

6. How do you think that Holmes knew about Stapleton's plan?



**D. The Novel****8) Answer the following questions:**

1. Why do you think Mr Sikes ran away from London hours after he heard Noah's news?  
.....

2. Who is Edwin Leeford and what other name did he use?  
.....

3. Why do you think Charley Bates started to fight with Mr. Sikes?  
.....

4. What did the servants from the workhouse say about Mrs. Bumble?  
.....

5. What are the papers that Fagin has hidden in his chimney?  
.....

**"This is not true!" cried Monks. "I do not have a brother."**

6. Who is Monks talking to ?

7. Who is Monks's brother?

8. What kind of person is Monks' How do we know this?

**E. Writing****9) Write a paragraph of about ninety (90) words on one (1) of the following:**

a- pollution in your city or village.

b - a crime and how it was solved.

**F. Translation****10) a. Translate into Arabic:**

1. It is necessary to turn off any lights that are not needed.  
.....

2. Egypt has reclaimed 400,000 hectares of desert to produce more food.  
.....

**b. Translate into English:**

- يجب ان يعاقب كل مهمل على اهماله .  
.....

Prepared and designed by:  
**Mr. Mahrous Ahmed Haikal**  
Assiut – Sahel Seleem  
01229603498  
mahroushahmed@facebook.com



# **PART TWO**

**The Novel**

# **Oliver Twist**

**Chapters**

**5, 6, 7, 8**



*Oliver Twist***Chapter 5**

weather  
 warm  
 holiday house  
 the country  
 servants  
 look after  
 realise  
 Sob\sobbed  
 post  
 village  
 nervous-looking  
 expression  
 politely  
 mad  
 hopeful  
 dead  
 die\died  
 happiness  
 the countryside  
 coach  
 relaxed  
 looked like  
 son  
 flowers  
 meanwhile  
 completely  
 terrible dream  
 nightmare

disappeared  
 criminals  
 changes  
 workhouse  
 inn /  
 nearby  
 cruel  
 master /  
 proudly  
 opposite  
 apprentice  
 excitedly  
 disappointed  
 address  
 slums  
 narrow  
 mud  
 fall down /  
 bag of coins  
 gold locket  
 Leather bag  
 Picked up  
 lifted  
 floor  
 frightened  
 official  
 dark river  
 heavy door

**The Chapter in Brief**

Moving to a small holiday house:

When the weather became warm, Mrs. Maylie took Rose and Oliver to her small holiday house in the country far from London. Mr. Giles and the other servants would look after Mrs. Maylie's usual house during her holiday. Oliver loved his time there until one day when Rose became ill. Mrs. Maylie was worried about Rose and sobbed her. Oliver comforted Mrs. Maylie and told her that Rose would get better.



### ✂ Two letters and a strange man:

Mrs. Maylie asked Oliver to post a letter to Dr Losberne and another letter for her son Harry. Oliver went to the nearest village where he could post the two letters. On his way back home, Oliver walked into a nervous-looking man. Oliver apologized to that man politely but that man shouted at him. Oliver thought that man ill or mad so he quickly ran back home.

### ✂ The arrival of Dr Losberne and Harry:

Dr Losberne arrived and told Mrs Maylie that Rose's case was very serious and that he must stay with them to cure her. A few days later, Dr Losberne told Mrs Maylie that Rose now was better. Oliver decided to go out to bring Rose some flowers. While he was returning, Oliver saw a coach stopping in the road next to him. Inside that coach were Mr. Giles and Harry. Oliver told them that Rose became better. Harry, Mr. Giles and Oliver walked back to the holiday house. Mrs. Maylie was pleased to see her son who blamed her for not telling him about Rose. He seemed that he cared about Rose very much. Every day, Harry brought flowers to Rose's room. Meanwhile Dr Losberne taught Oliver how to read and write.

### ✂ A horrible dream (nightmare):

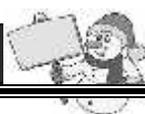
Oliver and the others had been at the holiday house for most of the summer and Oliver spent his time studying hard. While he was reading a book, Oliver fell asleep and had a terrible dream. He thought he saw Fagin and another man looking at him through a window. He woke up with a cry and he realized that it was not a dream. He saw them actually. The two men disappeared and Oliver shouted out. Mr. Giles and Harry ran up to help him. When they didn't find anyone there, they told Oliver that it was just a dream. Harry asked Oliver to write to him often and tell him how his mother and Rose were.

### ✂ Changes at the workhouse:

During that time, there had been changes at the workhouse. Mr. Bumble became the master of the workhouse and he married Mrs. Corney. After work one day, Mr. Bumble met a strange man ( Monks ) at an inn. Mr. Bumble thought that Monks wanted information about Oliver. On the contrary, Monks wanted information about Nurse Sally. When Monks paid Mr. Bumble money, Mr. Bumble told him that he knew the person who knew Nurse Sally's secret before death ( Mrs. Corney). Monks asked Mr. Bumble to bring that person to him at nine O'clock. He wrote him the address and left.

### ✂ The Bumbles' meeting with Monks:

The next night, took his wife and went to meet Monks. The address was in an area of slums where the criminals used to live. They met Monks inside an old factory. Mrs. Corney told Monks what nurse Sally had said before her death. She also showed him the gold locket which she stole it from her. Inside that locket was written the name "Agnes". Monks was not satisfied with all that information and he frightened the Bumbles by showing them a dark river running below them. The Bumbles didn't know what Monks was going to do with them.



## The Chapter in Dialogue

**المشهد:** فى منزل ميسز ميلى الصغير فى الريف وعندما مرضت روز ، انتحبت ميسز ميلى روز قائلة:

**Mrs. Maylie:** "My dear Rose, what will I do without you?"

فطمئنها اوليفر قائلاً:

**Oliver :** "Mrs. Maylie, Rose is so young and so good that nothing bad will happen to her,"

فردت ميسز ميلى قائلة:

**Mrs. Maylie:** "I hope you are right, Oliver."

**المشهد:** عندما لم تتحسن روز طلبت ميسز ميلى من اوليفر ان يرسل خطابا لدكتوى لوزبيرن واخر لابنها هارى:

**Mrs. Maylie:** "I have another letter here for my son Harry," " You can post this, too."

عند عودة اوليفر من البريد وبعد ان ارسل الخطابان اصطدم برجل نونظرة غاضبة / عصبية (منكس) فاعتذر له اوليفر قائلاً:

**Oliver:** "Sorry, sir, I did not see you,"

فرد منكس سائلاً:

**Monks:** "What are you doing here?"

**المشهد:** عندما وصل د. لوزبيرن واخبرهم انه غير امل وانه سيقوم معهم للاعتناء بـروز فقالت ميسز ميلى لاوليفر:

**Mrs. Maylie:** "She will sleep for a long time," "Perhaps she will wake up better. But I am

very worried that she will not wake up at all."

وبعد بضعة ايام وذات صباح عاد د. لوزبيرن غرماً روز متجهاً بهدوء الى اوليفر وميسز ميلى فقالت ميسز ميلى:

**Mrs. Maylie :** "Is she dead?"

**Dr Losberne:** "No!" " I think she'll be up and about in no time."

وعندما اطمئن اوليفر والسيدة ميلى على حالة روز، قرر اوليفر ان يذهب لاجتماع بعض الورد وعند عوته قابل عربة حنطور وبها السيد دجايلز والسيد هارى ميلى فاخرج السيد جايلز راساً من العربة سائلاً اوليفر:

**Mr. Giles:** "What news is there of Rose?"

**Oliver :** "It's good news,"

وبعدها خرج هارى من العربة سائلاً اوليفر:

**Harry :** "Are you sure that the news is good?"

فرد اوليفر قائلاً:

**Oliver :** "Yes, sir. Dr Losberne says she will be fine."

فاطمئن هارى وابتسم وقال لصاحب العربة (السائق)

**Harry :** "Take the coach, driver. I'll walk to my mother's. Come with me, Mr. Giles."

ميسز ميلى كانت فرحة ببقاء ابنها هارى فقال لها:

**Harry :** "I got your letter yesterday, Mother,"

" Why didn't you tell me Rose was ill before?"

**Mrs. Maylie:** "I didn't want to worry you."

**Harry :** "But you know how much I care about Rose."

**المشهد:** بعد ان قضوا معظم الصيف فى ذلك المنزل الصغير وفى نهاية يوم حلم اوليفر انه رأى فاجين ومنكس ينظرون اليه من النافذة وعندما استيقظ اوليفر تاكد انه ليس حلماً فصرخ قائلاً:

**Oliver:** "It was Fagin!"

فذهب اليه هارى ودجايلز فسأل هارى اوليفر:

**Harry:** "Which way did he go?"

وعندما لم يجد الرجال فاجين ومنكس اعتقدوا انه حلماً فقال هارى لاوليفر:

**Harry:** "Perhaps it was just a dream,"

فقال اوليفر:

**Oliver:** "No, I saw Fagin with the man I told you about,"



وعندما قرر هارى وامه ان يغادروا قال هارى لاوليفر:

**Harry:** "You can write now, can't you?"

"Will you write to me often and tell me how my mother and Rose are?"

**Oliver:** "Of course I will,"

**Harry:** "Don't tell anyone,"

**المشهد:** فى احدى الحانات يقابل منكس السيد بامبل وداربينهما حوار كالاتى:

**Monks** : "You work at the workhouse, don't you?"

**Mr. Bumble:** "I'm now the master of the workhouse."

**Monks** : "Good, then I'm sure you can give me some information,"

"Can you remember a time twelve years ago?"

"A boy was born in your workhouse. He later worked as an apprentice, but he ran away to London."

**Mr. Bumble:** "You mean Oliver Twist!"

**Monks** : "I don't want to know about him!" "I want to know about his nurse. Where is she?"

**Mr. Bumble:** "You mean Nurse Sally?" "She died last winter."

وبعد ان بدا منكس محبطا / خائب الامل قال له بامبل:

**Mr. Bumble:** "But she did say something to a person I know,"

**Monks** : "How can I find this person?"

**Mr. Bumble:** "I can introduce you tomorrow,"

**Monks** : "Bring the person to this address at nine o'clock," "Ask for Monks."

**المشهد:** / مستر وميسز بامبل فى العشوائيات حيث العنوان الذى اعطاه لهم منكس وهناك توقف البامبلز امام احدى المصانع القديمة فقال مستر بامبل لزوجته:

**Mr. Bumble:** "It should be here,"

فنادى صوت قائلا:

**A voice** : "Hello there," "Come in here."

فسار البامبلز عبر باب الى داخل المصنع القديم وهناك كان منكس ودار حوار كالتالى:

**Monks** : "So, you were with the nurse on the night she died?"

"What did she say to you?"

**Mrs. Bumble:** "Perhaps you have some money for this information?"

وعندما وضع منكس امامها كيس من النقود اخبرته بما حدث فى الليلة التى ماتت فيها سالى فقال لها منكس:

**Monks** : "She said that she took the gold locket? What more did she tell you?"

**Mrs. Bumble:** "She died before she could tell me any more,"

**Monks** : "What?"

**Mrs. Bumble:** "But after she died, I found this,"

واخرجت له ميسز بامبل كيس جلدى وبداخلة القلادة الذهبية ففتحتها منكس وبداخلها كان مكتوب (اجناس) فقالت ميسز بامبل سائله:

**Mrs. Bumble:** "Is this everything that you wanted to know?"

**Monks** : "Yes," "Now look,"

وقام منكس برفع باب ثقيل فى الارض وتحت الباب راوا نهرا مظلما يجرى اسفلهم فبدا القلق على مستر بامبل.



## Questions

and

## Answers

## أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب التدريبات:

**1. About how long did Oliver stay with Mrs. Maylie in the countryside?**

✎ Oliver stayed about three months/most of the summer with Mrs. Maylie in the countryside.

**2. Who came to see Rose when she was ill?**

✎ Dr Losberne, Harry Maylie and Mr. Giles came to see Rose when she was ill.

**3. What did Harry Maylie ask Oliver to do when he left?**

✎ Harry asked Oliver to write to him often (and secretly) to tell him about Rose and Mrs. Maylie.

**4. What changes had happened to Mr. Bumble?**

✎ Mr. Bumble had married Mrs. Corney and now he was the master of the workhouse.

**5. Who did Mr. Bumble meet at an inn? What did the man want?**

✎ Mr. Bumble met Monks. Monks wanted information about the woman who was with Oliver's mother (Nurse Sally).

**6. Where did Mr. and Mrs. Bumble meet him again? What did Mrs. Bumble give him?**

✎ They met in an old factory in a slum of the town. Mrs. Bumble gave him the locket that Nurse Sally had stolen from Oliver's mother.

**8. During Oliver's stay at Mrs. Maylie's summer house, what changes had happened in the workhouse?**

✎ Mr. Bumble became the master of the workhouse and he married Mrs. Corney.

**9. What was inside the small leather bag that Mrs. Bumble showed Monks?**

✎ There was the gold locket inside it.

**10. What kind of people lived in the area of slums where the Bumbles met Monks?**

✎ Only the poorest people, who were criminals, lived there.

**11. Why do you think the Bumbles were afraid to meet Monks in this area (the slums)? Explain.**

✎ Because only the poorest people lived there and many of those people were criminals.

**Questions & Answers****1- When and where did Mrs Maylie take Oliver and Rose?**

▶ When the weather was warm, Mrs Maylie took Oliver and Rose to her small holiday house in the country far from London.

**2- Who looked after Mrs Maylie's house while she was on holiday?**

▶ Mr Giles and other servants looked after her usual house.

**3- How far was Mrs Maylie worried about Rose?**

▶ When rose was ill, Mrs Maylie was so worried that she cried .



**4- How did Oliver comfort Mrs Maylie when she cried?**

- ▶ Oliver told her that Rose was so young and so good that nothing bad would happen to her.

**5- To whom did Mrs Maylie send Oliver to post the letters?**

- ▶ Mrs Maylie asked him to post a letter to Dr Losberne and another letter to her son Harry.

**6- Oliver was happy to do anything for Rose and Mrs Maylie .Discuss.**

- ▶ Oliver set off across some fields and ran until he reached the nearest village where he could post the letters .He felt happier when he knew that help was on its way.

**7- Who did Oliver meet on his way back from the post office?**

- ▶ Oliver met Monks (a nervous– looking man with dark cruel eyes and an angry expression.

**8- What did Oliver think of Monks when he met him ?**

- ▶ He didn't know if he was ill or mad, and he quickly ran back home.

**9- What did Dr Losberne decide about Rose ?**

- ▶ Dr Losberne didn't seem very hopeful about Rose's case and decided to stay with them.

**10- How did Dr Losberne make Mrs Maylie and Oliver happy ?**

- ▶ Dr Losberne told them that Rose would be up and about in no time.

**11- Why did Oliver decide to go out into the countryside ?**

- ▶ To get Rose some flowers.

**12-What did Oliver tell Mr Giles and Harry about Rose ?**

- ▶ He told Mr Giles that Rose would be fine.

**13- Who was Harry?**

- ▶ He was Mrs Maylie's son and he was about twenty-five and he looked very like his mother.

**14- Harry cared very much for Rose .Illustrate .**

- ▶ Harry cared about Rose very much and he brought flowers to Rose's room every day.

**15- How was Dr Losberne helpful to Oliver ?**

- ▶ Dr Losberne became Oliver's teacher and he spent his time learning to read and write .

**16- When did Oliver feel happy for the first time in his life?**

- ▶ When Rose was completely better .

**17- What happened to Oliver when he fell asleep while he was studying hard?**

- ▶ He had a terrible dream .He thought that he saw Fagin and another man looking at him through a window .He woke up with a cry and then realized that it wasn't a dream.

**18-What did Fagin and Monks do?**

- ▶ They disappeared and Oliver shouted out Mr. Giles and Harry ran up to help him.

**19-Why did Harry tell Oliver it was a dream?**

- ▶ Because the men who ran after the criminals couldn't find them anywhere.

**20- What did Harry ask Oliver to write about?**

- ▶ Harry asked Oliver to write to him about his mother ( Mrs Maylie ) and Rose.



**21-What made Rose cry ?**

- ▶ Rose cried because she saw Harry leaving the house.

**23- What do you know about Mrs Corney ?**

- ▶ Mrs Corney was the woman who listened to Nurse Sally the night she died.

**24 - What did Mr Bumble tell Monks in the inn?**

- ▶ Mr Bumble told Monks that he was the master of the workhouse.

**25-Why did Monks give Mr Bumble some money ?**

- ▶ Monks gave Mr Bumble some money to give him the information he wanted.

**26-What kind of information did Monks want to know from Mr Bumble?**

- ▶ He wanted to know about the nurse who was attending Oliver's birth.

**27-Why was Monks disappointed?**

- ▶ Monks was disappointed because Mr Bumble told him that Nurse Sally died last winter.

**28-Why did Mr Bumble want Monks to meet Mrs Corney?**

- ▶ Mr Bumble wanted Monks to meet Mrs Corney who the nurse told her something before her death hoping to get more money.

**29- What did Monks ask him to do?**

- ▶ Monks asked Mr Bumble to bring Mrs Corney to his address at 9 o'clock.

**30- Where did Monks meet Mr Bumble and his wife ?**

- ▶ At a poor part of the town by the river.

**31- What were the slums like?**

- ▶ This was an area of slums where only the poorest people lived and many of them were criminals. The streets were narrow and covered in wet mud and the wooden houses were so old that they could fall down.

**32- What did Monks give Mrs. Bumble to give him information about the nurse?**

- ▶ Monks put a bag of coins in front of Mrs. Bumble to tell him about what happened on the night that Nurse Sally died.

**33- What was written inside the locket?**

- ▶ Inside the locket there was the name Agnes (Oliver's mother).

**34- When did Mr. Bumble look frightened?**

- ▶ When Monks lifted a heavy door in the floor next to where they were standing. Under the door they could see the dark river running below them. Mr. Bumble looked frightened

**35- Do you think the Bumbles were reliable persons? Why? Why not? Mr. and Mrs. Bumble proved to be greedy and dishonest. Explain.**

- ▶ No, they were not reliable persons as Mr. Bumble didn't keep Oliver's secret and his wife Mrs. Corney didn't keep Nurse Sally's secret. Both of them sold the secrets to Monks. They are greedy people and dishonest.



## Quotations

**"My dear Rose, what will I do without you "**

**1- Who said that statement ?**

☞ Mrs. Maylie.

**2- What was wrong with Rose ?**

☞ She became ill.

**3- What did those words show about the speaker?**

☞ They showed that Mrs. Maylie loved Rose very much.

**"Rose is so young and so good that nothing bad will happen to her."**

**1- Who said this statement ? To whom?**

☞ Oliver to Mrs. Maylie.

**2- What was wrong with Rose ?**

☞ She became ill.

**3- How kind was Rose to the speaker?**

☞ She helped him not to be a thief and asked Mrs. Maylie to look after him.

**" I hope you are right."**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Mrs. Maylie to Oliver.

**2- What did the speaker hope to be right?**

☞ She hoped that Rose to become better as Oliver said.

**" I have another letter here for my son Harry." " You can post it too."**

**1- Who said this statement? To whom?**

☞ Mrs. Maylie to Oliver.

**2- To whom was the other letter?**

☞ To Dr Losberne.

**3- Why did the speaker send those two letters?**

☞ To tell Harry and Dr Losberne about Rose's illness.

**" Sorry, sir, I didn't see you,"**

**1- Who said this statement? To whom?**

☞ Oliver to Monks.

**2- For what was the speaker apologizing?**

☞ For walking into that man.

**3- Did the other person accept that apology?**

☞ No, he didn't.

**"What are you doing here?"**

**1- Who said this statement? To whom?**

☞ Monks to Oliver.

**2- What was the other person doing at that place?**

☞ He was posting to letters.

**3- What did the other person do after that question?**

☞ He thought the man ill or mad so he quickly ran home.



**"She will sleep for a long time." "Perhaps she will wake up better.  
"But I am very worried that she will not wake up at all."**

- 1- Who said this statement? To whom was it said?  
☞ Dr Losberne to Mrs. Maylie
- 2- About whom was he\ she talking?  
☞ About Rose.
- 3- What was wrong with the mentioned person?  
☞ She was ill.

**"Is she dead? "**

- 1- Who said that statement? To whom?  
☞ Mrs. Maylie to Dr Losberne.
- 2- About whom was he\ she talking?  
☞ About Rose.
- 3- Was that person really dead?  
☞ No, she got better.

**" No, I think she'll be up and about in no time."**

- 1- Who said these words? To whom?  
☞ Dr Losberne to Mrs. Maylie.
- 2- About whom was he\ she talking?  
☞ About Rose.
- 3- What was wrong with the mentioned person?  
☞ She was ill.

**"What news is there of Rose? "**

- 1- Who said these words? To whom?  
☞ Mr. Giles to Oliver.
- 2- How was the news?  
☞ The news was good.
- 3- What was wrong with Rose?  
☞ She was ill.

**"It is good news. "**

- 1- Who said these words? To whom?  
☞ Oliver to Mr. Giles.
- 2- About whom was that news?  
☞ About Rose.
- 3- What was that good news?  
☞ Rose had recovered from her illness. .

**" Are you sure that the news is good?"**

- 1- Who asked this question ? To whom?  
☞ Harry to Oliver.
- 2- What was that good news?  
☞ Rose had recovered from her illness. .
- 3- What do you know about the speaker?  
☞ Harry was Mrs. Maylie son.



**"Take the coach. I'll walk to my mother "**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Harry to the coach driver.

**2- Who was the speaker's mother ?**

☞ Mrs. Maylie.

**3- Why was the speaker there?**

☞ Because Rose was ill.

**"I got your letter yesterday."**

**"Why don't you tell me Rose was ill before."**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Harry to his mother (Mrs. Maylie)

**2- Who posted that letter?**

☞ Oliver.

**3- What did these words show about the speaker?**

☞ They showed that he cared about Rose very much.

**"I didn't want to worry you."**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Mrs. Maylie to her son, Harry.

**2- What didn't the speaker want to worry the listener about?**

☞ She didn't want to worry him about Rose.

**3- Why didn't the speaker want to worry the other person?**

☞ Because he was her son and didn't want to hurt him.

**"It was Fagin."**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Oliver to Harry and Mr. Giles.

**2- Where did the speaker see Fagin?**

☞ He saw him looking at him through a window.

**3- Did the speaker really see Fagin?**

☞ Yes, he did.

**"Which way did he go? "**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Harry to Oliver.

**2- About whom was the speaker asking?**

☞ About Fagin.

**3- Where did the mentioned person go?**

☞ He disappeared.

**" Perhaps it was just a dream, "**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Harry to Oliver.

**2- What was that dream?**

☞ The dream was Oliver had seen Fagin.

**3- Was it really a dream?**

☞ No, because Oliver saw Fagin actually.



**"No, I saw Fagin with the man I told you about"**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Oliver to Harry and Giles.

**2- Where did the speaker see those persons?**

☞ He saw them looking at him through a window.

**3- Who was the man with Fagin?**

☞ He was Monks.

**"You can write now, can't you? "**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Harry to Oliver.

**2- Who taught the other person?**

☞ Dr Losberne.

**3- Why did the speaker ask this question?**

☞ He wanted Oliver write to him to tell him about his mother and Rose.

**"Will you write to me often and tell me how my mother and Rose are?"**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Harry to Oliver.

**2- What do you know about the speaker?**

☞ He was Mrs. Maylie's son.

**"You work at the workhouse, don't you? "**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Monks to Mr. Bumble.

**2- Where were the speakers?**

☞ They were at an inn.

**"I'm now the master at the workhouse. "**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Mr. Bumble to Monks.

**2- Which workhouse was the speaker talking about?**

☞ It was the workhouse where Oliver was born.

**"Good, then I'm sure you can give me some information,"**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Monks to Mr. Bumble.

**2- What information did the speaker needed?**

☞ He needed information about Nurse Sally.

**3- Who could provide the speaker with the information needed?**

☞ Mrs. Corney.

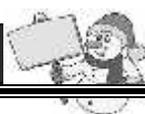
**"Can you remember a time twelve years ago?"**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Monks to Mr. Bumble.

**2- What happened twelve years ago?**

☞ Oliver was born in the workhouse.



**"A boy was born in your workhouse. He later worked as an apprentice, but ran away to London."**

- 1- Who said these words? To whom?  
☞ Monks to Mr. Bumble.
- 2- About whom was he talking?  
☞ About Oliver.
- 3- What was the other person's job at the time of talking?  
☞ He was the master of the workhouse.

**"I don't want to know about him." "I wanted to know about his nurse."**

- 1- Who said these words?  
☞ Monks to Mr. Bumble.
- 2- What does the underlined word "him" refer to?  
☞ It refers to Oliver.
- 3- Who was the nurse?  
☞ She was nurse Sally.

**"You mean nurse Sally? "She died last winter."**

- 1- Who said these words? To whom?  
☞ Mr. Bumble to Monks.
- 2- Who was nurse Sally?  
☞ She was the nurse who witnessed Oliver's birth.

**"But she did say something to a person I know."**

- 1- Who said these words? To whom?  
☞ Mr. Bumble to Monks.
- 2- What does the underlined word "she" refer to?  
☞ It refers to nurse Sally.
- 3- Who was that person?  
☞ Bumble's wife, Mrs. Corney.

**"How can I find this person?"**

- 1- Who said these words? To whom?  
☞ Monks To Mr. Bumble .
- 2- Why did the speaker want to find that person?  
☞ To get information about nurse Sally.
- 3- Who was that person?  
☞ Bumble's wife, Mrs. Corney.

**"I can introduce you tomorrow."**

- 1- Who said these words? To whom?  
☞ Mr. Bumble to Monks.
- 2- What can the speaker introduce?  
☞ He can introduce his wife, Mrs Corney, to Monks.

**"Bring the person to this address at nine tomorrow."**

- 1- Who said these words? To whom?  
☞ Mr. Bumble to Monks.
- 2- Where was that address?  
☞ at slums.
- 3- Who was that person?  
☞ Bumble's wife, Mrs. Corney.



**"It should be here."**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Mr. Bumble to his wife..

**2- Where were the speakers?**

☞ In front of an old factory.

**3- What were the speakers doing?**

☞ They were going to meet Monks.

**"So you were with the nurse on the night she died?"**

**"What did she say to you?"**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Monks to Mrs. Corney.

**2- Who was that nurse?**

☞ Nurse Sally.

**3- What did the nurse say to the other person?**

☞ Sally told Mrs. Corney that she took her gold locket.

**"Perhaps you have some money for this information."**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Mrs. Corney to Monks.

**2- What information was the speaker going to tell?**

☞ She would tell him that Sally had stolen Oliver's mother's gold locket.

**3- What did these words show about the character of the speaker?**

☞ They showed that Mrs. Corney was greedy and dishonest.

**"She said that she took the gold locket?"**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Monks to Mrs. Corney.

**2- About whom was the speaker talking?**

☞ About Nurse Sally.

**3- From whom was the gold locket taken?**

☞ From Oliver's mother.

**"But after she died, I found this."**

**1- Who said these words? To whom?**

☞ Mrs. Corney to Monks.

**2- About whom was the speaker talking?**

☞ About Nurse Sally.

**3- What did the speaker find?**

☞ She found the names "Agnes" written inside the locket.



## Oliver Twist

## Chapter 6

horrified	مرعوب	show	يبين - يرى
faces	وجوه	coach	عربة تجرها الخيول
weak	ضعيف	cheerful	مرح
gang	عصابة	trust	يثق بـ
appeared	ظهر	difficult time	وقت صعب
interest	اهتمام	anxious	قلق
conversation	محادثة	sensible	عقل - متزن
crept	زحف	married	متزوج - تزوج
upstairs	الطابق الاعلى	tired	متعب
downstairs	الطابق الاسفل	pretending	مدعيًا
rest	يستريح	arrested	قبض على
shawl	شال للسيدات	safe	امن
shoulders	اكتاف	evil man	رجل شرير
expensive	غالي	at the bottom	في القاع
send away	يطرد	prison	سجن
puzzled	مختار	advise	ينصح
kindly	بلطف	bridge	كوبري
thieves	لصوص	extremely	للغاية
called	يدعى	upset	مزعج

## The Chapter in Brief

## ✂ Getting rid of the locket:

The Bumbles were afraid that Monks might throw them into the cold water running under the old factory. Instead, Monks threw \ dropped the locket in the dark river. The Bumbles were happy that they were alive and decided to go home. But before leaving, Monks asked them to forget about the story of the locket.

## ✂ Visiting Sikes who had been ill:

In London Fagin, Charely and the Artful Dodger visited Sikes who had been ill and weak since the night he left Oliver in the field outside the house. Sikes blamed Fagin for not asking about him and that he needed money. He suggested that Nancy could go to Fagin's house to bring the money.

## ✂ A secret meeting between Fagin and Monks:

At Fagin's house, Fagin sent the gang out to do some work in the streets so he could talk to Nancy. While he was giving her the money, Monks arrived. Fagin introduced Nancy to him. Nancy looked at Monks with interest. Monks asked Fagin to go to another room to talk. Nancy felt worried and went to overhear them. Fagin justified that by telling Nancy that they had a little business to do and he gave her the money and asked her to leave.



### ✎ Asking Rose to help Oliver:

Nancy disguised as a poor young woman and went to meet Rose at the hotel where Rose was staying. At first, the receptionist thought that Rose wouldn't want to meet such a poor young woman but when Nancy insisted, she sent a servant to tell Rose who allowed Nancy to meet her. Nancy told Rose what she had heard when Fagin and Monks were talking secretly. She told her that Monks was an evil man and that he knew her (Rose) and where she was staying. Nancy told Rose that Fagin wanted to make Oliver a thief and that he got rid of the only proof for Oliver's identity \ truth. He also said that he had the boy's money and he wanted his brother Oliver to be put in prison. Nancy asked Rose to ask for anyone's advice. Before leaving, Nancy told Rose that if she needed any information, she could find her every Sunday night at 11 o'clock walking across London Bridge.

### ✎ Asking Mr. Brownlow for help:

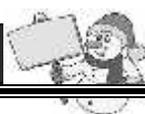
While Rose was thinking who she could ask for advice, Oliver ran into the room crying "I have seen him". He told Rose that he had seen Mr. Brownlow walking into a house and that Mr. Giles brought Mr. Brownlow's address. Rose took Oliver and went to meet Mr. Brownlow. When they arrived, Rose went first to talk to Mr. Brownlow. When Rose told Mr. Brownlow about Oliver, he remembered what Oliver had done. Mr. Grimwig, Mr. Brownlow's friend, thought Oliver a thief. Rose told Mr. Brownlow all what had happened to Oliver. On hearing that, Mr. Brownlow asked to see Oliver. When Oliver entered the room, he ran to Mrs. Bedwin who told him that he looked like a gentleman's son. Rose told Mr. Brownlow everything Nancy had told her. Mr. Brownlow looked worried and decided to visit Mrs. Maylie.

### ✎ Discussing Oliver's problem:

Mr. Brownlow, Mrs. Maylie and Dr Losberene sat together at the hotel to discuss Oliver's problem. Mr. Brownlow told them that they must find out who Oliver's mother was and about the money that should be his. Dr Losberne suggested telling the police but Mr. Brownlow told him that the police would put the gang in prison and they would not help Oliver. The three decide to speak to Monks and get other people to help them. Mr. Brownlow suggested Mr. Grimwig, and Dr Losberne suggested Harry Maylie.

### ✎ Noah, Charlotte and Fagin in London:

Soon after Oliver had disappeared from Mr. Sowerberry's shop, Noah got married to a young woman called Charlotte. Noah stole Mr. Sowerberry's money and escaped to London with his wife. While they were eating at one of the old inns, Fagin was sitting near them. While Noah was telling Charlotte about the theft and that he wanted to be a thief, Fagin heard him. Fagin went to them and asked Noah if he took the money, Noah denied saying that his wife did that. Fagin comforted Noah and told him that he came to the right place. Fagin offered to help them to be thieves. Fagin told Noah that he (Noah) would keep half of what he would steal besides getting food and bed and that Fagin would take the other half of the stolen money. When Noah agreed, Fagin told him that they could take money from children who had been sent by their mother's to buy things. Noah decided to give himself a name Mr. Morris Bolter and Charlotte Mrs. Bolter. At that moment, Charley came into the inn and told Fagin that the police had arrested the Artful Dodger. Fagin looked at Noah and his wife and warned them that if they didn't do what he said, they would be sent to prison like the Artful Dodger.



## The Chapter in dialogue

**Monks** : "Don't worry," "The only thing that is going in the water is the locket,"  
"Now we can all forget all about this story, can't we?"

**Mr. Bumble**: "Yes, of course," "Now let's get home,"  
وَشَعَرَ بِأَمْبِلَ وَزَوْجَتَهُ بِالسَّعَادَةِ عِنْدَمَا غَادَرَ الْمَصْنَعَ الْقَدِيمَ أَحْيَاءً.

**Fagin**: "How are you feeling, Bill?" "We've brought you some food."  
**المشهد / فيجين وتشارلي والماكر البارع يزورون سايكس الذي كان مريضاً لمدة ثلاث أسابيع فدخل عليه فيجين والأولاد:**

**Sikes** : "I've been ill for three weeks!" "Where have you been?"

**Fagin**: "You should be happy to see us with these things,"

**Sikes** : "I need some money," "Nancy can go to your place to get some money for me."  
وَفِي مَنْزِلِ فِيجَيْنِ أَرْسَلَ فِيجَيْنِ الْأَوْلَادَ خَارِجًا وَعِنْدَمَا كَانَ عَلَى وَشِكِّ أَنْ يُعْطَى نَانْسِي الْأَمْوَالَ ظَهَرَ رَجُلٌ عَلَى الْبَابِ فَقَالَ فِيجَيْنِ:

**Fagin** : "Ah, this is Monks,"

وَقَدِمَ فِيجَيْنِ نَانْسِي إِلَى سَايْكِي وَالتَّتَى نَظَرَتْ إِلَيْهِ بِاهْتِمَامٍ ثُمَّ سَأَلَ فِيجَيْنِ سَايْكِسَ قَائِلاً:

**Fagin** : "So, Monks, did you see him?"

**Monks**: "Let's talk in another room,"

وَصَعِدَ لِلْأَعْلَى مِنْكَسَ وَفِيجَيْنِ فَفَرَّرَتْ نَانْسِي أَنْ تَتَسَمَعَ إِلَيْهِمْ سِرًّا وَبَعْدَ أَنْ سَمِعَتْ مَا دَارَ بَيْنَهُمَا نَزَلَتْ مَرَّةً أُخْرَى  
لِلْأَسْفَلِ وَعِنْدَ نَزْوْلِ سَايْكِسَ وَفِيجَيْنِ اعْتَذَرَ فِيجَيْنِ لِنَانْسِي قَائِلاً:

**Fagin**: "We had a little business to do,"

"Now, here is your money. Go and take it to Mr. Sikes."

وَفِي طَرِيقِهَا إِلَى مَنْزِلِ سَايْكِسَ بَدَأَتْ تَتَفَكَّرُ فِيمَا سَمِعَتْهُ وَبَدَأَتْ فِي الْبُكَاءِ وَفِي مَسَاءِ ذَلِكَ الْيَوْمِ انْطَلَقَتْ نَانْسِي فِي شَوَارِعِ لَنْدُنِ قَائِلاً لِنَفْسِهَا:

**Nancy to herself**: "I might be too late,"

وَبَعْدَهَا وَصَلَتْ نَانْسِي إِلَى مَنْطِقَةِ غَنِيَّةٍ فِي لَنْدُنِ مَتَوَقِّفَةً خَارِجَ فَنْدُقٍ صَغِيرٍ وَلَقَدْ كَانَتْ نَانْسِي مَتَنَكِّرَةً فِي زِيِ امْرَأَةٍ  
شَابِهَةٍ فَقِيرَةٍ مَرْتَدِيَّةٍ شَالَا عَلَى اِكْتِافِهَا فَنَظَرَتْ إِلَيْهَا مُوظِّفَةً اِلْتِقَابِ قَائِلاً:

**The woman at the desk**: "Well miss, what do you want?"

**Nancy** : "I need to speak to Miss Maylie,"

**The woman at the desk**: "I don't think she will want to see someone like you!"

**Nancy** : "Please! Tell her I must speak to her. It's very important. Then you can send me away."  
وَبَعْدَ أَنْ سَمِعَتْ رُوزَ لِنَانْسِي بِمُقَابَلَتِهَا دَارَ الْحَوَارِ كَالآتِي:

**Rose** : "How can I help you?"

**Nancy**: "Oh dear lady, I am the woman who took Oliver back to the house of thieves!"

"But you do not understand why I did it and what it is to be poor like me!"

**Rose** : "I am sorry to hear this,"

وَبَعْدَهَا قَالَتْ نَانْسِي لِرُوزِ:

**Nancy**: "Do you know a man called Monks?"

**Rose** : "No,"

**Nancy**: "He is an evil man. He knows you and he knows you are here. That is how I found  
this hotel. I heard him talking to Fagin. He wanted Fagin to make Oliver a thief."

**Rose** : "But why?"

**Nancy**: "He said that the only thing that could explain who the boy really is lies at the  
bottom of the river. He said that he had the boy's money and now wanted his  
brother Oliver put in prison."

**Rose** : "His brother?"

**Nancy**: "Yes. And he said he knows that Oliver is staying with you and Mrs Maylie."

**Rose** : "This is not good. But what can I do?"

**Nancy**: "You must know someone who can advise you," "Now I must go."

**Rose** : "Where can I find you if I need information?"

**Nancy**: "Every Sunday night at eleven o'clock. I'll walk across London Bridge,"



**المشهد** / روز تفكر فيمن يمكن ان يساعدها وفي تلك اللحظة دخل عليها اوليفر الغرفة صائحا:

**Oliver:** "I have seen him!"

**Rose :** "Who have you seen?"

**Oliver:** "Mr Brownlow! I saw him walk into a house. Mr Giles asked a servant who lived there and it is him! Look, I have his address!"

**Rose :** "We must go and see him," "We will take a coach at once."

**المشهد** / روز في مقابلة السيد براونلو في وجود صديقة السيد جريم ويج

**Rose :** "I believe you were very kind to a young friend of mine,"

**Mr Brownlow:** "And who is this friend?"

**Rose :** "Oliver Twist,"

**Mr. Grimwig :** "He was a thief!"

**Mr Brownlow:** "Don't listen to my friend,"

**Rose :** "Oliver is a good boy who has had a very difficult time,"

**Mr Brownlow:** "What can you tell me about this boy who disappeared after I helped him."

وبعد ان شرحت روز كل ما حدث لاوليفر قال السيد براونلو:

**Mr Brownlow:** "Then I must see the boy!"

وعند دخول اوليفر صاحت السيدة بيدوين قائلة:

**Mrs Bedwin :** "Oliver, I know I would see you again!" "You look like a gentleman's son!"

**المشهد** / في الفندق السيد براونلو مع السيدة ميلي ودكتور لوزبيرن يناقشون مشكلة اوليفر:

**Mr Brownlow:** "We must find out who Oliver's mother was, and about the money that should be his."

**Dr Losberne :** "How can we do this? We could tell the police,"

**Mr Brownlow:** "The police will put the gang in prison but that would not help Oliver,"

"We must speak to this man Monks alone."

"We can ask Nancy where we can find him."

وبعد ان اتفقوا ان يستعينوا بمساعدة اخرين رشح براونلو صديقة جريم ويج ورشح لوزبيرن هارى ميلي فقال لهم براونلو:

**Mr Brownlow:** "We will stay in London for a while,"

"And when this is all finished, my good friends, I will tell you why I left the country."

**المشهد** / في شوارع لندن نواه وزوجته تشارلوت يبحثون عن مكان للنوم والطعام فقالت تشارلوت:

**Charlotte:** "Are we there yet?"

**Noah :** "We are nearly there,"

ودخلوا حانه قديمة وطلبوا طعام وبدأوا في الحديث:

**Noah :** "It was easy to take money from Mr Swerberry,"

"So we can also take things from other people. I think I would be a good thief."

ولم يدرك نواه وزوجته ان فيجين يجلس بالقرب منهم وسمع كل شيء فقال لهم:

**Fagin:** "So you took some money, did you?"

**Noah:** "I didn't steal anything. It was her!"

**Fagin:** "Don't worry, you've come to the right place,"

"I can get you work. You keep half of what you take and you get food and a bed. I keep the other half."

**Noah:** "When can I start?"

**Fagin:** "Tomorrow. I'll show you where you can take money from children who have been sent by their mothers to buy things,"

**Noah:** "Thank you. I'm Mr. Morris Bolter." "And this is my wife Mrs Bolter."

**Fagin:** "Good," "I'm pleased to meet you."

وفي تلك اللحظة دخل تشارلي واخبر فيجين ان الماكر البار قد قبض عليه فالتفت فيجين الى نواه وزوجته قائلا:

**Fagin:** "Do what I say and I will keep you safe," "But if you don't do what I say, you will be sent to prison like the Artful Dodger!"



## Questions

and

## Answers

## أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب التدريبات:

1. **What did Monks throw into the water?**

✎ He threw the locket of Oliver's mother.

2. **Approximately how long was Bill Sikes away from London?**

**How long has he been ill?**

✎ He was away from London for three months and he had been ill for three weeks.

3. **Why did Nancy go to Fagin's house? Who did she meet there?**

✎ She went there to bring money for Sikes. She met Monks there.

4. **What did Nancy do while Fagin and Monks were talking?**

✎ She overheard \ spied on them.

5. **Who did Oliver see in London that made him happy?**

✎ He saw Mr. Brownlow.

6. **Why did Nancy want to go to meet Miss. Maylie (Rose) after she had heard Fagin and Monks speaking?**

✎ To ask her to save Oliver from the gang.

7. **Why was Rose puzzled when she saw Nancy at her hotel room?**

✎ Because Nancy looked liked a poor young woman.

8. **What is the relationship between Monks and Oliver Twist?**

✎ Monks is Oliver's half brother.

9. **Where could Rose find Nancy if she needed help?**

✎ She could find her walking across London Bridge every Sunday night at 11.

### Questions & Answers

1. **Why did Monks drop the gold locket in the river?**

Because it was the evidence that Oliver was his half-brother.

2. **Why did Fagin want the Bumbles to forget about the story of the locket?**

Because he didn't want anyone to know about Oliver's real family.

3. **Why were Mr. and Mrs. Bumble happy to leave the old factory?**

They thought that Monks would throw them into the river.

4. **Who visited Sikes when he was ill? What did they bring with them?**

Fagin, Charley Bates and the Artful Dodger and brought some food with them.

5. **Who would bring the money for Sikes from Fagin's house?**

Nancy.

6. **Why did Fagin send the gang out to do some work when Nancy came to take the money for Sikes?**

So he could talk to Nancy and he didn't want anyone to know where he kept his money.



**7. How did Nancy look at Monks when she first met him?**

She looked at that tall, dark-eyed man with interest.

**8. What excuse \ justification \ account did Fagin give Nancy for talking secretly he and Monks?**

He told her that they had a little business to do.

**8. Why did the woman at the hotel desk look at Nancy in surprise?**

Because Nancy was poor in old clothes and the hotel was expensive.

**9. Show that Nancy was kind-hearted girl.**

She went to Rose to save Oliver from the evil men. Besides, she cried on her way to Sikes house when she remembered what Monks and Fagin said about Oliver.

**10. What did Nancy tell Rose about Monks?**

She told her that he was an evil man and that he knew her and where she was.

**11. What did Monks ask Fagin to do with Oliver?**

He wanted Fagin to make Oliver a thief to be put in prison.

**12. What was the only thing that could explain who Oliver was?**

His mother's locket which Monks had dropped into the river.

**13. To whom did go Rose to ask for his advice about Oliver's problem?**

She went to Mr. Brownlow.

**14. What did Mr. Brownlow accuse Oliver of when Rose reminded him of?**

He accused him of disappearing after he had helped him.

**15. Noah was a dishonest boy and he was ungrateful, with no principles Illustrate.**

Noah stole Mr. Sowerberry's money who was very kind to him. Besides, when Fagin wanted to make sure that he stole the money, Noah told him that his wife did that.

**16. From whom did Noah get married?**

He got married to a young woman called Charlotte.

**17. What was Noah's dream?**

To be rich by being a good thief.

**18. What job would Noah and Charlotte do for Fagin?**

They would take money from children who were sent by their mothers to buy things.

**19. What was the deal between Fagin and Noah about helping Noah to be a thief?****How was the money stolen by Noah divided between him and Fagin?**

Noah would take half of the money besides getting food and bed and Fagin would take the other half.

**20. What bad news did Charley tell Fagin during his meeting with Noah and his wife?**

He told him that the police had arrested the Artful Dodger.

**21. How did Fagin threaten \ warn Noah and his wife?**

He told them that if they didn't do what he said, they would be sent to prison.

**22. How did Noah and Charlotte feel when Fagin threatened warn them if they didn't obey him?**

They felt rather worried.



## Quotations

**"Now we can all forget all about this story, can't we?"**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

- *Monks to the Bumbles.*

**b- Where were they and what had the speaker just done?**

- *They were in an old factory. Monks had just thrown the locket into the river.*

**c- What does he want them to forget and why?**

- *He wanted them to forget about the locket because he didn't want anyone to know about Oliver's real family.*

**"I need some money, Nancy can go to your place to get some money."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

- *Sikes to Fagin.*

**b- Why did the speaker want some money?**

- *Because he was ill.*

**c- Where could Nancy get the money?**

- *From Fagin's house.*

**"I don't think she will want to see someone like you!"**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

- *The hotel receptionist to Nancy.*

**b- Who was "she"?**

- *It refers to Rose.*

**c- Why did the speaker think that?**

- *Because Nancy was disguised as a young poor woman.*

**"Please! Tell her I must speak to her. It's very important."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

- *Nancy to the hotel receptionist.*

**b- Who did the speaker want to meet?**

- *She wanted to meet Rose.*

**c- Why did the speaker want to see the mentioned person urgently?**

- *She wanted to tell Rose to save Oliver from Monks.*

**"But you didn't understand why I did it and what it is to be poor like me!"**

**a- Who said this to whom?** - *Nancy to Rose.*

**b- What did the speaker do that the other person didn't understand?**

- *Taking Oliver back to the house of thieves*

**c- Why did the speaker do that thing?**

- *Because she was afraid of the gang.*

**"I am sorry to hear this."**

**a- Who said this to whom?** - *Rose to Nancy.*

**b- What was the speaker sorry for? What does 'this' refer to?**

- *Rose was sorry for Nancy being poor.*

**c- What was the other person going to tell the speaker?**

- *Nancy was going to tell Rose about Monks who was planning something bad for Oliver.*



**"He is an evil man. He knows you and he knows you are here."**

a- **Who said this to whom?**

- Nancy to Rose.

b- **About whom was the speaker talking? What does 'he' refer to?**

- About Monks.

c- **Why was the mentioned person an evil man?**

- Because he wanted to take Oliver's fortune and put him in prison.

**"He wanted Fagin to make Oliver a thief."**

a- **Who said this to whom?**

- Nancy to Rose.

b- **Who wanted to make Oliver a thief? What does 'he' refer to?**

- Monks.

c- **Why did that person want to make Oliver a thief?**

- To him in prison and then take his share in his father's money.

**"He said that the only thing that could explain who the boy really is lies at the bottom of the river."**

a- **Who said this to whom?**

- Nancy to Rose.

b- **Whose speech is the person reporting?**

- She was reporting Monks's speech.

c- **What is it that lies at the bottom of the river?**

- The locket of Oliver's mother.

**"He said that he had the boy's money and now wanted his brother Oliver put in prison"**

a- **Who said this to whom?**

- Nancy to Rose.

b- **Whose speech is the person reporting?**

- She was reporting Monks's speech.

c- **From where did the boy's money come?**

- It was his father's money.

**"Every Sunday night at eleven o'clock. I'll walk across London Bridge."**

a- **Who said this to whom?**

- Nancy to Rose.

b- **Where were they at that time?**

- In a hotel.

c- **What do you think of the speaker?**

- She was a kind girl who didn't want Oliver to be a thief.

**"I believe you were very kind to a young friend of mine."**

a- **Who said this to whom?** - Rose to Mr. Brownlow.

b- **Who was the speaker talking about?**

- About Oliver.

c- **Where was that friend then?**

- He was waiting outside.



**"What can you tell me about this boy who disappeared after I helped him?"**

**a-Who said this to whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Rose.

**b-Who was that boy?**

- Oliver Twist.

**c- Why did that boy disappear?**

- He was kidnapped by Fagin's gang.

**"And when this all finished, my good friends, I will tell you why I left the country."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Mrs. Maylie, Rose and Dr Losberne.

**b- What was the speaker talking about?**

- Saving Oliver from the gang.

**c- Why did the speaker leave the country?**

- He wanted to find Monks who was working in the West Indies.

**"It was easy to take money from Mr. Sowerberry.**

**So we can also take things from other people. I think I would be a good thief."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

- Noah to his wife.

**b- Where were they when he or she said this?**

- They were in an old inn and they were eating.

**c- Who heard these words and what was the result?**

- Fagin heard them and persuaded them to work with him as thieves.

**"I didn't steal anything. It was her."**

**a-Who said this to whom?** - Noah to Fagin.

**b-What did the speaker deny?**

- He denied stealing money from Mr. Sowerberry.

**c-Who was "her"?**

- Noah's wife (Charlotte).

**"Don't worry, you've come to the right place, I can get you work."**

**a-Who said this to whom?**

- Fagin to Noah and Charlotte.

**b-Did they come to the right place? Why?**

- Yes, because they all were thieves.

**c-What work could they get?**

- They could work as thieves.

**"But if you don't do what I say, you will be sent to prison like the Artful Dodger."**

**a-Who said this to whom?**

- Fagin to Noah and Charlotte.

**b-How could the speaker protect them?**

- He will not tell the police about them.

**c-What crime did they commit before coming?**

- They stole Mr. Sowerberry's money.



## Oliver Twist

## Chapter 7

part of		lakes	بحيرات
find out	يكتشف	killer	
directions	اتجاهات -	guards	
magistrate		kidnap	يخطف
follow	يتبع	prefer	يفضل
carefully		unkind	غير عطوف
busy streets		relatives	
patiently		will	وصيه
lawyer		cautious	حريص
set me free	يطلق سراحى	burned	
have a walk	يتمشى	believe	يصدق
pound	جنيه	promise	يوعد
midnight	منتصف الليل	keen to	
approached		share	يشارك
look like	يشبه	at that moment	
a red mark		locked	
persuade	يقنع	ordered	

## The Chapter in Brief

## ✎ Noah's first job :

Noah (Morris Bolter as he named himself) became part of the gang. Fagin decided to give Noah his first job. He asked him to go and find out what was happening to the Artful Dodger. Noah followed the magistrates through the busy streets in London. Noah waited patiently inside the building till he saw the Artful Dodger walking in front the magistrate. The Dodger spoke to the magistrate rudely and asked him to send him to prison and that his lawyer would soon set him free again and that the magistrate would be in trouble. The magistrate angrily told his men to take that boy away.

## ✎ Asking Noah to watch Nancy:

On Sunday Sikes and Fagin were talking in Mr. Sikes house, Nancy heard them quietly. She waited until it was nearly eleven o'clock, then she decided to go to meet Rose as she promised her before. Unfortunately, Sikes didn't allow her to go out because it was too late. When Fagin saw that Nancy was upset, he decided that Nancy should be watched. After finishing his first day as a thief successfully, Noah was asked to watch Nancy. Fagin promised Noah to give him one pound note if he succeeded in doing that job.

## ✎ Following \ Watching Nancy:

The next Sunday, Noah followed Nancy. Nancy went to the London Bridge. Under the bridge, she met Mr. Brownlow and Rose. Mr. Brownlow asked Nancy to help them find Fagin or Monks. Nancy told them that she could help them find Monks. She told them which inn he visited and how he looked like. She told them that Monks was about 28 but looked much older and he always looked nervous and he had a red mark on his neck. Mr. Brownlow offered Nancy to come with them away from her old life but Nancy told him that she couldn't leave that life. Mr. Brownlow and Rose tried to persuade Nancy but they couldn't change her mind.

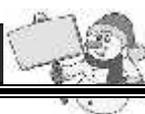


### ✍ **Killing Nancy ( Nancy's death ):**

After hearing all what Nancy had said, Noah hurried to Fagin and told him. Fagin told Sikes about what Nancy had done (telling other people about the gang). On hearing that, Sikes jumped up and left the house. Sikes killed Nancy and he ran away to the countryside north of London. For days, he slept in the pen and drank water from lakes. There he heard people talking about a woman who was killed in London last week. He heard too that it was said that the killer had gone to the north of Birmingham. Sikes decided to go back to London.

### ✍ **Kidnapping Monks:**

While that was happening, Mr. Brownlow's men kidnapped Monks and brought him to Mr. Brownlow. Mr. Brownlow threatened Monks that he would call the police for him. Monks told Mr. Brownlow that he didn't think that his father's oldest friend would be so unkind to him. Brownlow told Monks that he had been his father's oldest friend and that he was going to married Monks's aunt before she died and that was why he had him at that place. Brownlow told Monks that he was pleased that he (Monks) had changed the name of his kind family from Edward Leeford to Monks. Monks asked Brownlow what he wanted from him and Brownlow told him that he had a brother but Monks denied. Brownlow told Monks that after the death of his mother, a relative of his family left his father a lot of money. Brownlow completed that Monks's father became ill in Italy and he died there and that no will was found, so all his money became his (Monks). Mr. Brownlow told Monks that his father visited him before going to Italy. Monks's father told Mr. Brownlow that he had married a young woman called Agnes and that he gave him a painting of her which Mr. Brownlow had put on his wall. That woman had a baby boy. Monks told Mr. Brownlow that was just a story but Brownlow told him it was real. Mr. Brownlow told Monks that when he found Oliver, he could see that Oliver looked very like the young woman in the painting and after that Monks had kidnapped Oliver. Mr. Brownlow told Monks that when he couldn't find Oliver, he decided to find him (Monks), so he had gone to the West Indies where Monks was working when Brownlow last heard of him. But Monks was not there, so Brownlow returned to London. Monks cried denying that he hadn't any brothers but Mr. Brownlow told him that he did and that his father did have a will but Monks burned it. Besides, Mr. Brownlow told Monks that he (Monks) had dropped the locket his father gave to Agnes in the river. That locket was the only thing left to show that who Oliver was. Brownlow also told Monks that a woman (Nancy) had been killed. On hearing that, Monks told Mr. Brownlow that it was true about the locket but it was not him who killed the woman and he must believe him. Mr. Brownlow told Monks if he promised to tell everyone about what had happened, perhaps he might finally believe him. Monks promised to do that. At that moment, Dr Losberne ran into the room and he was excited to share his news. He told Mr. Brownlow that the police thought the man who killed Nancy was coming back to London. Mr. Brownlow ordered Monks to stay in that room till he return and that it was his only hope of staying safe.



## The Chapter in Dialogue

المشهد / الماكر البارع امام المحقق

**The Artful Dodger:** "Send me to prison, I don't care!"

"My lawyer will soon set me free again and you will be in trouble!"

**The magistrate:** "Take him away!"

المشهد / فى منزل سايكس حيث فيجين وسايكس يتحدثان بهدوء نانسى تنتظر حتى الساعة 11 وتستعد للخروج:

**Sikes** : "Where are you going at this time?"

**Nancy** : "I don't feel well. I would like to have a walk,"

**Sikes** : "It's too late,"

المشهد / فى منزل العصابه حيث ادى نواه عمله فى اول يوم فى الشوارع فلقد اخذ من الاطفال اموال وحليب وخبز:

**Fagin:** "You're good for a beginner," "Now I have a nice job for you. I want you to watch a young woman for me. Find out where she goes, who she sees and what she says. Can you do that?"

**Noah:** "Of course!" "What will I get?"

**Fagin:** "A pound note,"

"But wait until next Sunday, then I will tell you which person you need to follow."

المشهد / فى الاحد الثانى خرجت نانسى لمقابلة روز كما هو متفق وتبعها نواه ونزلت نانسى وروز وبراونلو سلالم مظلمة بجوار الجسر ودار حوار كالاتى::

**Mr. Brownlow** : "Why have you brought us to this strange place?"

**Nancy** : "I was afraid to speak to you where there is light,"

**Mr. Brownlow** : "Why didn't you come last week?"

**Nancy** : "The door was locked and I could not come."

**Mr. Brownlow** : "But no one knows you are here tonight?"

**Nancy** : "No, they don't."

**Mr. Brownlow** : "We know what you told Rose," "We need to find Monks. And if we cannot find him, we need Fagin."

**Nancy** : "I can help you find Monks."

**Mr. Brownlow** : "What does he look like?"

**Nancy** : "He's tall and strong with dark hair and eyes," "He's about 28 but looks much older. He always looks nervous and on his neck he has....."

**Mr. Brownlow** : "He has a red mark,"

**Nancy** : "Do you know him?"

**Mr. Brownlow** : "I think so," "But I am not sure. Thank you for helping us.

Now let us help you. Come with us, away from your old life."

**Nancy** : "I cannot leave it," "I must go home."

المشهد / فى منزل العصابه وبعد ان اخبر نواه فيجين بما حدث من نانسى وعند وصول سايكس بدأ فيجين غير سعيد فسأله سايكس:

**Sikes** : "What's happened?"

**Fagin** : "What would you do if you found out that a friend had told people all about our gang?"

**Sikes** : "I would punish that person."

**Fagin** : "Then listen to what our friend has to say,"

وبعد ان حكى نواه لسايكس ما حدث من نانسى ففزع سايكس وخرج من المنزل وبعد ساعات قتل سايكس نانسى وهرب الى الريف ولايام نام سايكس فى الخلاء وشرب من البحيرات وفى يوم وامام احدى الحانات سمع سايكس رجال يتحدثون:



**One of the men:** "Did you hear that a woman was killed in London last week

**Another man :** "Yes, they say the killer has gone north to Birmingham. I hope they catch him,"  
فقرر سايكس ان يعود الى لندن.

**المشهد / فى نفس الاثناء كان رجال براونلو استطاعوا اختطاف منكس واحضارة الى منزل براونلو دار الحوار التالى:**

**Brownlow to the guards:** "If he does not do what we say, take him into the street and call the police."

**Monks :** "Who said these men could kidnap me?"

**Brownlow:** "I did, if you do not like it, go and find a policeman. But I would prefer you to sit down."

**Monks :** "I did not think my father's oldest friend would be so unkind to me."

**Brownlow:** "I was your father's oldest friend, and I was going to marry his sister, your aunt, before she died. That is why I have you here, Edward Leeford. I am pleased you have changed the name of your kind family."

**Monks :** "What do you want?"

**Brownlow:** "You have a brother,"

**Monks :** "No, I was an only child,"

**Brownlow:** "After your mother died, a rich relative of your family left your father a lot of money. But your father became ill in Italy and he also died. No will was found, so all his money became yours." "But before he went to Italy, he visited me. He told me that he had married again. He married a young woman called Agnes. He gave me a painting of her which I put on my wall. She had a baby boy."

**Monks :** "This is just a story,"

**Brownlow:** "It is not. When I first found Oliver, I could see that he looked very like the young woman in the painting, but you kidnapped the boy before I could find out more."

**Monks :** "It was not me!"

**Brownlow:** "I know what happened," "When I could not find Oliver, I decided to find you. So I went to the West Indies where you were working when I last heard of you. But you were not there, so I returned to London."

**Monks :** "This is not true!" "I do not have a brother."

**Brownlow:** "You know you have a brother. Your father did have a will, but you burned it. The locket your father gave to Agnes was the only thing left to show who the boy was. You dropped that in the river. And now a woman has been killed!"

**Monks :** "It is true about the locket," "But it was not me who killed the woman. You must believe me!"

**Brownlow:** "If you promise to tell everyone what has happened, then perhaps I will finally believe you,"

**Monks :** "I promise,"

وفى تلك اللحظة دخل دكتور لوزبيرن قائلاً:

**Dr Losberne:** "I have spoken to a policeman,"

"The policeman says they think the man who killed Nancy is coming back to London!"

فنظر براونلو الى منكس قائلاً له:

**Brownlow to Monks:** "Stay in this room until I return,"

"It is your only hope of staying safe."



## Questions

and

## Answers

## أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب التدريبات:

**1-What two jobs did Noah Claypole (Morris Bolter) do for Fagin?**

- ✎ The first job was to go and find out what was happening to the Artful Dodger.
- The second job was to watch Nancy wherever she went.

**2-Where did Nancy talk to Rose and Mr. Brownlow?**

- ✎ Under London Bridge.

**3-Did anyone hear their conversation? Who?**

- ✎ Yes, Noah heard them.

**4-Why did Fagin send someone to follow Nancy?**

- ✎ To find out where she went and who she saw and what she said.

**5-What did Nancy tell Rose and Mr. Brownlow?**

- ✎ She told them about the gang.

**6-What did Mr. Brownlow try to do for Nancy? Did she accept his offer?**

- ✎ He offered her to come with them away from her old life.

**7-What did Sikes do to Nancy when Fagin told him that she had told someone about the gang? Where did Sikes go after that?**

- ✎ He killed her.

## Questions &amp; Answers

**1. What did Noah call himself? Why?**

- ★ He called himself Morris Bolter because he stole Mr. Sowerberry's money before leaving.

**2. The Artful Dodger spoke rudely with the magistrate. He was a dare boy. Discuss.**

- ★ He told the magistrate that he didn't care of being sent to prison and his lawyer would soon set him free again and he (the magistrate) would be in trouble.

**3. Why didn't Sikes allow Nancy to go out for a walk at 11 o'clock?**

- ★ Because he thought it was too late.

**4. Why did Fagin ask Noah to watch Nancy?**

- ★ Because she was upset when Sikes refused her to go out at 11 o'clock. Besides, he knew that she was planning something.

**5. What did Noah do on his first day on the streets as a thief?**

- ★ He had taken money, milk and bread from the children of rich families.

**6. How much would Noah take from Fagin for following Nancy?**

- ★ He would take a pound note.



**7. What made Nancy choose a dark place for meeting Rose and Mr. Brownlow?**

★ She didn't want anyone from Fagin's gang to see her.

**8. Why didn't Nancy meet Rose on the first Sunday as it was arranged?**

★ Because the door was locked and she couldn't go out.

**9. How old was Monks? What did he look like?**

★ He was 28 years old. He was tall and strong with dark hair and eyes.

**10. Why was Nancy killed?**

★ Because she told Mr. Brownlow about the gang.

**11. How did Nancy meet her end?**

★ Sikes killed her because she told Mr. Brownlow and Rose about the gang.

**12. Where did Sikes run away after killing Nancy?**

★ He ran away to the countryside north of London.

**13. Where did Sikes sleep drink in the countryside?**

★ He slept in the open and he drank water from lakes.

**14. Why did Sikes decide to return to England after hiding in the countryside?**

★ Because he heard that the police thought the murderer was going to Birmingham.

**15. How was Monks brought to Mr. Brownlow's house?**

★ Two guards caught him and took him by force.

**16. What did Mr. Brownlow tell Monks about his relation to his father?**

★ Mr. Brownlow was his father's oldest friend and he was going to marry his aunt.

**17. How did Monk's father get his money?**

★ A rich relative left him a lot of money.

**18. What did Monk's father tell Mr. Brownlow before travelling to Italy?**

★ He told him that he had married a woman called Agnes. She had a baby boy.

**19. Why did Mr. Brownlow travel leave England and travel to West Indies?**

★ He went to the West Indies looking for Edward Leeford (Monks).

**20. What did Mr. Brownlow accuse Monks of?**

★ Burning the will that his father left. Throwing the gold locket that showed Oliver was his brother into the river.

**21. What did Brownlow ask Monks to promise in order to believe him?**

★ He asked him to promise to tell everyone what had happened.

**22. How did Fagin provoke Mr. Sikes against Nancy?**

★ Fagin asked Mr. Sikes what he would do if he found out that a friend had told people about their gang. Mr. Sikes said that he would punish that person. So Fagin made Noah tell him about what he had heard at the bridge and who he had seen.

**23. How was Nancy a traitor betrayer to her group?**

★ She told Mr. Brownlow and Rose about the gang and their secrets.



## Quotations

**"Send me to prison, I don't care." " My lawyer will soon set me free again"**

**a-Who said this to whom?**

-The Artful Dodger to the magistrate.

**b-What happened to the speaker?**

-He was arrested by the police as he was a thief.

**c-What was the addressed person's reaction?**

-He ordered the policeman to take the speaker away.

**"Where are you going at this time?"**

**a-Who said this to whom?**

-Sikes to Nancy.

**b-What was that time?**

-11 o'clock at night.

**c-Where was the other person going?**

-She was going to meet Rose and Mr. Brownlow.

**"I don't feel well, I would like to have a walk,"**

**a-Who said this to whom?**

-Nancy to Sikes.

**b-Where would the speaker walk?**

-She would walk at London Bridge.

**c-Was the speaker telling the truth? Why? Why not?**

-No, because she was going to meet Rose.

**"You're good for a beginner," Now I have a nice job for you."**

**a- Who says this to whom?**

- Fagin to Noah.

**b- What was the other person good at?**

- He was good at stealing.

**c- What was the job the speaker had for that person?**

- Fagin wanted Noah to follow Nancy.

**"Find out where she goes, who she sees and what she says. Can you do that?"**

**a-Who said this to whom?**

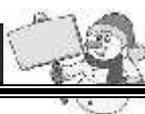
-Fagin to Noah.

**b-Who was the speaker talking about?**

-Nancy.

**c-Why did the speaker want that person to be followed?**

-Because he suspected her and knew she was planning something.



**"Why have you brought us to this strange place?"****a-Who said this to whom?**

-Mr. Brownlow to Nancy.

**b-Where was that strange place?**

-A dark place under London Bridge.

**c-Why did the speaker brought those people to that strange place?**

-In order to tell them about the gang and she didn't want any one hear them.

**"The door was locked and I couldn't come."****a-Who said his to whom?**

-Nancy to Brownlow and Rose.

**b-Who locked the door?**

-Sikes.

**c-Where was the speaker going?**

-To meet Brownlow and Rose.

**"He was 28 but looks much older. He always looks nervous and on his neck he has....."****a-Who said this to whom?**

- Nancy to Mr. Brownlow.

**b-Who is the speaker talking about?**

- About Monks.

**c-What does he have on his neck?**

- He had a red mark.

**"Thank you for helping us. Now let us help you. Come with us, away from your old life. "****a- Who said this to whom and where was it?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Nancy.

**b- How had the person helped the speaker?**

- She told them about the gang's plan and where they could find Monks.

**c- Did the listener accept the offer? What was the result?**

-No, she didn't and as a result she was killed.

**"I cannot leave it" " I must go home."****a-Who said this to whom?**

-Nancy to Mr. Brownlow.

**b-What couldn't the speaker leave?**

-She couldn't leave her old life with the gang.

**c-What happened to the speaker after going home?**

- She was killed.

**"I did not think my father's oldest friend would be so unkind to me. "****a- Who says this to whom?**

- Monks to Mr. Brownlow.

**b- Where was this?**

-At a house belonged to Mr. Brownlow.

**c- How was the person being unkind to the speaker?**

-By telling the police about him.



**"I was your father's oldest friend and I was going to marry his sister. "**

**a- Who says this to whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.

**b- Did the speaker marry the listener's aunt? Why? Why not?**

-No, because she died.

**c- What did the speaker do with the listener?**

-He kidnapped him.

**"No will was found, so all his money became yours. "**

**a- Who says this to whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.

**b- Where did the mentioned person get the money?**

-A rich relative of his family left it to him.

**c- Why wasn't the will found?**

-Monks had burned it.

**"But before he went to Italy, he visited me. He told me that he had married again"**

**a-Who said this to whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.

**b-Who was the speaker talking about?**

-Monk's father.

**c-Whom did the mentioned person get married?**

- He got married to a young woman called Agnas.

**"He gave me a painting of her which I put on my wall, she had a baby."**

**a- Who says this to whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.

**b- Who do he and she refer to?**

-He refers to Monks's father and she refers to Agnes (Oliver's mother)

**c- Who was that baby?**

-Oliver.

**"This is just a story,"**

**a- Who says this to whom?**

- Monks to Mr. Brownlow.

**b- What was that story?**

-Mr. Brownlow told Monks that his father had got married to a young woman called Agnes and that woman had a baby boy (Oliver).

**c- What was the other person's reply?**

-He told him that it was true not a story.

**"So I went to the West Indies where you were working when I last heard of you."**

**a-Who is the speaker?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.

**b-Who was working in the West Indies?**

-Monks.

**c-Did the speaker meet him there?**

- No, he didn't.



**"This is not true!" " I do not have a brother."**

**a- Who says this to whom?**

- Monks to Mr. Brownlow.

**b- Who was that brother?**

-He was Oliver.

**c- Why did the speaker deny that?**

-Because he wanted to take all his father's money \ fortune \ wealth.

**"If you promise to tell everyone what has happened, then perhaps I will finally believe you."**

**a- Who says this to whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.

**b- What would the speaker believe the listener of?**

-He could believe him that he didn't kill Nancy.

**c- Did the addressee promise?**

-Yes, he did.

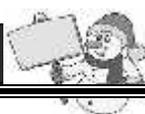
**"It is your only hope of staying safe."**

**a- Who says this to whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.

**b- What was the other person's only hope?**

-Staying in the room until Mr. Brownlow's return.



*Oliver Twist***Chapter 8**

by the river	بالقرب من النهر	dead	ميت
slums	عشوائيات	poverty	الفقر
overcrowded	شديد الزحام	bright	لامع
poverty	فقر	orphan	يتيم
events	احداث	half-brother	اخ غير شقيق
escaped	هرب	morals	اخلاق
fight	عراك	shame	خزى
horse	حصان	adopt	يتبنى
instructions	تعليمات	pleasure	سرور / متعة
crowd	الجمهور	identity	شخصية
ladder	سلم	sentenced to death	السجن مدى الحياة
fifty pounds	خمسون جنيها	chimney	مدخنة
tide	المد و الجزر	cell	زنزانة
education	التعليم	informer	مخبر سرى

**The Chapter in Brief****Arresting the gang and Sikes's death:**

Toby Cracket, and two other thieves (Kags and Chitling) were hiding in an old house by the river in an area of the poorest slums in London. The criminals were discussing the surprising events that had happened earlier that day. Chitling told Toby that the police had arrested Fagin at two o'clock. They also arrested Bolter but Charley Bates could escape through a window. All the other people in the gang were taken by the police.

During their discussion, someone knocked on the door. A man entered who had a handkerchief across his mouth and a large hat. He was Mr. Sikes. Sikes asked Toby to allow him to stay with them and Toby agreed. After that there was another knock on the door, it was Charley Bates. When Charley saw Sikes he looked shocked and shouted that Sikes was the one who killed Nancy. Charley jumped on Sikes and they began to fight. However, Sikes was far too strong for the boy, and soon Charley was lying on the floor. Charley jumped up and shouted, "Help! The killer is here! Break down the door!" The people outside heard Charley's calls. Mr. Brownlow on a horse gave instructions to the people. Sikes opened the window and shouted at the crowd of people saying, "You'll never take me to prison!" Sikes realizing that someone could climb up to the window, he knew he had to escape. He ran up the stairs to the top roof. Then he climbed onto the roof of the old building. When the people in the street saw Sikes, they all pointed. Mr. Brownlow offered 50 pounds to the man who could take Sikes alive. Although the tide in the river below was too low, Sikes preferred to jump into the river and he died\ drowned.



### ✎ Confessions \ the truth:

Two days later, Mr. Brownlow took Oliver to the workhouse where Oliver was born. Mrs. Maylie, Rose and Dr. Losberne and Monks went with them. Oliver was amazed to see the places that he remembered from his long walk to London. The coach stopped outside a hotel that Oliver remembered. In the evening while they were eating, Mr. Brownlow was staying in his room with Monks. Dr Losberne and Mr. Grimwig visited them, then returned to sit with Oliver and Rose.

Finally at 9 o'clock, Mr. Brownlow entered with Monks. Oliver looked at Monks nervously. Mr. Brownlow holding some papers said that it was difficult for everyone but it was important that they all heard what he had to say. Mr. Brownlow asked Monks if Oliver was his half brother and he was the son of Agnes and his father, Edwin Leeford and Monks admitted saying that Oliver was born in that town, in the workhouse. Brownlow also asked Monks what he had found when his father died and Monks said that he had found his father's will and a letter to Agnes. He added that his father's letter asked Agnes to keep the gold locket with her name on it. Brownlow clarified that the will said that some of Monk's father money should go to Agnes and the other half should go to her child (Oliver), but only if the child grew up as a person with good morals. Monks's father didn't want another bad son like Monks. Monks explained that he didn't want Oliver to be a good boy to prevent him from his father's money. Monks followed Oliver when he ran away to London and helped the Artful Dodger to find him so he could introduce him to his friend Fagin, and then Fagin helped him to be a thief. When Mr. Brownlow asked Monks about the locket, Monks told him that he bought the locket from some people at the workhouse where Oliver lived. After that Mr. Brownlow came back into the room with Mr. and Mrs. Bumbles. Mr. Bumble cried when he saw Oliver saying that he was happy to see him again. Mr. Brownlow asked Mr. Bumble if he sold the locket to Monks but Mr. Bumble denied adding that he had never seen Mr. Monks before. Then Mr. Grimwig came in with two servants from the workhouse. One of those servants told them that they had seen Mrs Bumble taking a gold locket and some papers from Nurse Sally's hands when she died. On hearing that, Mrs Bumble looked down with shame admitting doing that and she blamed herself that she shouldn't have taken something so important. Mrs. Bumble asked Mr. Brownlow what he would do with them. Mr. Brownlow told her that he would tell the people never to give them a good job. After that Mr. Brownlow asked Monks what he could tell them about Rose. Monks told them that Rose was Agnes's younger sister and when Agnes's father died Rose was sent to live with a poor family in Wales. He added that years later Rose was adopted by Mrs. Maylie. Monks told them that there were some papers which told them all that but Fagin had them. Oliver was very happy when he knew that Rose was his aunt and he told Rose that he was happy that he and Rose were relatives.



✍ A happy end:

The next day Mr. Brownlow asked Oliver to go with him to see Fagin in the Prison which was going to be Fagin's home forever as he had been sentenced to death. Fagin was shocked when he saw Oliver. When Fagin wanted to talk to Oliver, Mr. Brownlow told him that was not and he asked him about the papers had given him. Fagin refused to tell Mr. Brownlow as he wanted to tell Oliver only. Fagin told Oliver that the papers were in a small bag inside the chimney of his front room. Fagin asked Oliver to get him out of the prison but Oliver told him that he couldn't do that and he left him.

Monks went to America to start a new life and no one saw him again.

**Fagin's gang** were all sent to prison, but not the young Charley Bates. After the death of Nancy, **Charley** decided that all criminals were bad. He worked hard to get a good job on a farm.

He lived a happy life.

**Noah Claypole** went on to work as an informer.

**Rose** was soon married to the man she loved, Harry Maylie, and they in a lovely house with Mrs. Maylie.

**Mr. Brownlow** adopted Oliver as his son and they moved to a house near to their good friends Rose, Harry and Mrs. Maylie

Although Oliver lived a long and successful life, he could never forget the many poor children that lived in the city nearby.



## Questions

and

## Answers

أولاً: أسئلة الكتاب المدرسي وكتاب التدريبات:

1. **Name the people who were in the house with Sikes before he tried to escape.**

Toby Cracket, Kags, Chitling and Charley Bates.

2. **Where did Mr. Brownlow take Oliver two days later? Who else was there?**

He took him to the workhouse where Oliver was born. Mrs. Maylie, Rose, Mrs Bedwin and Dr Losberne were with them.

3. **Why did Monks want Oliver to become a thief?**

To get all their father's money because if Oliver was a bad boy, he wouldn't inherit.

4. **What did Monks do to make Oliver a thief?**

He helped the Artful Dodger to find Oliver when he ran away to London.

Then the Artful dodger introduced Oliver to Fagin who helped Oliver to be a thief.

5. **What did Mr. and Mrs. Bumble say about the locket?**

They said that they sold the locket to Monks.

6. **How did the others know that they (the Bumbles) were lying?**

When the workhouse servants told them that they had seen Mrs. Bumble take a gold locket and some papers from Nurse Sally's hands when she died.

7. **What do we learn about Rose Maylie's identity? Who is she?**

She was Agnes's younger brother so she was Oliver's aunt.

8. **Why did Oliver and Mr Brownlow visit Fagin in prison?**

To ask him about the place of the papers Monks had given him.

ثانياً: أسئلة متنوعة:

9. **Who was Toby Crackit ?**

He was the thief who had been with Mr Sikes and Oliver when they tried to break into Mrs Maylie's house

10. **Where did Toby and the two other criminals hide?**

They were hiding in an old house by the river.

11. **How was the area of the poorest slums?**

The overcrowded streets were full of unwanted smells and mud. It was an area of great poverty, where people lived with little hope

12. **What were the criminal discussing while they were hiding in the old house?**

They were discussing the surprising events that had happened earlier that day.

13. **What were the surprising events that had happened earlier that day?**

The police caught Fagin and Bolter. All the other people in the gang were taken by the police. But Chitling and Charley Bates escaped through a window.



**14. How was Mr Sikes in disguise?**

Mr Sikes put a handkerchief across his mouth and a large hat. He wanted to hide in the house.

**15. What was Charley's reaction when he saw Mr. Sikes?**

Charley accused him of killing Nancy then jumped on Mr Sikes and they began to fight.

**16. How far was Charley brave?**

Although Mr Sikes was too strong for him, he fought with him and he shouted that the killer was here so people heard his calls and came to the house.

**17. Who was the man on the horse who came with the people to the house?**

He was Mr Brownlow who was giving instructions.

**18. What did Mr Sikes tell the people in the street?**

Mr Sikes opened the window and told them that they would never take him to prison.

**19. What did Mr. Brownlow do to catch Mr. Sikes?**

He asked for a ladder so that they could climb up to the window so Mr. Sikes climbed onto the roof of the old building. He also offered fifty pounds to the man who would take Mr. Sikes alive.

**20. Why would no one have the fifty pounds from Mr Brownlow?**

Because Mr Sikes jumped into the river where the tide was too low so he died.

**21. How did Oliver feel when he saw the workhouse area?**

Oliver was amazed and excited. He told Rose about his memories in the place and hoped that he could give clothes to his orphan friends and taught them how to read and write.

**22. Who did Mr Brownlow introduce to Oliver in the hotel?**

He introduced Monks (Oliver's half brother)

**23. What were the names of Oliver's parents ?**

Oliver's mother was called Agnes while his father's name was Edwin Leeford .

**24. What did Monks admit?**

He admitted that Oliver was his brother and his father had left a will and a letter to Agnes.

**25. What was written in the letter which Monks found on the desk?**

His father asked Agnes to keep the gold locket with her name on it.

**26. What did the will Oliver's father left say ?**

The will said that some of the money should go to Monks. But there was a lot of money, half of the money should go to Agnes. The other half should go to her child, but only if he grew up as a person with good morals .

**27. How did Monks plan to prevent Oliver from getting his share in his father's wealth?**

He didn't want Oliver to be good but to be a thief so that he wouldn't get the money.

**28. How did Monks try to achieve his plan?**

As Oliver grew up, Monks watched him carefully and when Oliver ran away, Monks helped the Artful Dodger to find him so he could introduce Oliver to Fagin to be a thief.



**29. What did Mr Bumble say when he saw Oliver in the hotel?**

Mr Bumble said that he was so happy to see Oliver again and he said Oliver had always been such a good boy .

**30. Mr Bumble was a liar .Discuss.**

He denied selling the locket to Monks and said that he had never seen him before.

**31. How did the two servants of the workhouse prove that Mr. Bumble was a liar?**

They said that they saw Mrs Bumble taking a gold locket and some papers from nurse Sally's hands when she died.

**32. How did Mrs Bumble react after that accusation?**

She looked down with shame and she admitted taking those important things.

**33. What would Mr Brownlow do to punish the Bumbles?**

He would tell people not to give them a good job again.

**34. To what extent did Monks make Oliver happy when he talked about Rose?**

He said that Rose was Agnes's younger sister ( Oliver's aunt )

**35. What happened to Rose after her father's death ?**

Rose was sent to live with a poor family in Wales. Years later she was adopted by Mrs. Maylie.

**36. How did Oliver feel when he knew that Rose was his aunt?**

At first Oliver didn't know what to say .Then he smiled at Rose and said that he was very happy they were relatives.

**37. Why would Fagin stay in prison for ever ?**

Because he had been sentenced to death.

**39. What did Fagin ask Oliver to do when he visited him in prison?**

Fagin asked Oliver to get him out of the prison but Oliver refused.

**40. What happened to Monks at the end of the story ?**

Monks went to America to start a new life and no one saw him again.

**41. What happened to Fagin's gang at the end of the story?**

Fagin's gang were all sent to prison but not the young Charley Bates. After Nancy had died, he decided that all criminals were bad .He worked hard to get a good job on a farm. He lived a happy life .Noah Claypole went on to work as an informer.

**42. What happened to Rose at the end of the story?**

Rose was married to Harry Maylie and they lived in a lovely house with Mrs Maylie.

**43. How was Oliver rewarded at the end of the story?**

Oliver Twist was adopted by Mr Brownlow and went to live near to their good friends Rose Harry and Mrs Maylie. Although he lived a long and successful life, he could never forget the many poor children that lived in the city nearby.



## Quotations

**"When did the police catch Fagin?"**

**a- Who asked this question and to whom?**

-Toby asking Kags and Chitling.

**b- What was the answer to that question?**

-At two o'clock.

**c- Why did the police catch Fagin?**

-Because he was the leader of the gang.

**"At two o'clock."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Chitling to Toby.

**b- What happened at that time?**

-The police caught Fagin,

**c- Where were the speakers?**

-They were hiding inside an old house by the river.

**"Charley Bates and I escaped through a window, but they also arrested Bolter."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Chitling to Toby.

**b- From whom did the speaker escape?**

-He escaped from the police.

**c- Who was Bolter?**

-He was Noah Claypole.

**"All the other people in the gang were taken by the police,"**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Kags to Toby.

**b- Who could escape from the police?**

-Charley Bates and two other criminals.

**c- Who was the leader of that gang?**

-Fagin.

**"No one else knows we're here, do they?"**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Kags to Toby and Chitling.

**b- Where were the speakers?**

-They were in an old house by the river.

**c- Who was the only one who knew they were there?**

-Charley Bates.

**"Is that true that they've arrested Fagin?"**

**a- Who asked that question and to whom?**

- Bill Sikes to Toby and the two other criminals.

**b- Where were they?**

-They were in an old house by the river.

**c- Who was Fagin?**

-He was the gang leader.



**"Toby, can I stay here?"**

**a- Who said this?**

- Bill Sikes.

**b- Where did the speaker want to stay?**

-They were in their hiding house.

**c- What was Toby's reply?**

-He told him that he could stay if he had to.

**"Yes, if you must,"**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Toby to Bill Sikes.

**b- What did the speaker accept \ agree to?**

-He agreed that Toby could stay with them.

**c- Where were the speakers?**

-They were in an old house by the river.

**"Not you! You're the one who killed Nancy!"**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Charley to Bill Sikes.

**b- Where were they?**

-They were in their hiding house.

**c- Why did that person kill Nancy?**

-Because she told other people about Sikes bad plans.

**"Help! The killer is here! Break down the door!"**

**a) Who said this to whom?**

- Charley Bates shouting to the people outside the house.

**b) Who was the killer?**

- Bill Sikes.

**c) Who did that person kill?**

- He killed Nancy.

**"You'll never take me to prison!"**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

- Bill Sikes to the people in the street.

**b- Where was the speaker when he said that?**

-He was shouting from the window at the old house.

**c- Why would anyone take the speaker?**

-Because he would throw himself into the river.

**"I will give fifty pounds to the man who takes that man."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Mr. Brownlow to the crowd of people in the street.

**b- Who was the speaker talking about?**

-Bill Sikes.

**c- Why did the speaker want to catch that person?**

-Because he was a dangerous criminal who had killed Nancy.



**"And there is the road to the house where I lived with Mrs Mann when I was little. Perhaps my orphan friends are still there!"**

**a) Who said this to whom?**

- Oliver to Rose.

**b) Where was the person?**

- In a coach travelling towards the place where he was born.

**c) What did the person hope to do for the orphan friends?**

- He hoped to give them clothes and teach them how to read and write.

**"We can give them clothes and teach them how to read and write."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

- Oliver to Rose.

**b- Who was the speaker talking about?**

- He was talking about the orphans in the workhouse.

**c- What do those words show about the speaker?**

- They show that Oliver could never forget the many poor children.

**"This is difficult for everyone,"**

**" But it is important that we all hear what I have to say."**

**a) Who said this to whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to all the attendants.

**b) What was the speaker going to say?**

- He was going to reveal Oliver's and Rose's truth.

**c) Why was that difficult for everyone?**

- Because Oliver turned out to be Monks's half brother and Rose's nephew.

**"He is the son of Agnes and your father my good friend Edwin Leeford."**

**a- Who was the speaker?**

- Mr Brownlow.

**b- Who was the speaker talking to?**

- Monks.

**c- Who is the son of Agnes?**

- Oliver.

**"When your father died, what did you find on his desk?"**

**a) Who said this? To whom?**

- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.

**b) What was the answer given to that question?**

- Monks found his father's will and a letter to Agnes.

**c) What was the relation of the listener to Oliver?**

- He was his half-brother.

**"I found his will and a letter to Agnes,"**

**a) Who said this? To whom?**

- Monks to Mr. Brownlow.

**b) What does "his" refer to?**

- It refers to Oliver's \ Monks's father.

**c) What was written in that letter?**

- Monks's father asked Agnes to keep the gold locket with her name on it.



**"My father's letter asked Agnes to keep the gold locket with her name on it,"**

- a) **Who said this? To whom?**  
- Monks to Mr. Brownlow.
- b) **Who was Agnes?**  
- She was Oliver's mother.
- c) **Why was Agnes asked to keep the gold locket with her name on it?**  
- To prove to people that Agnes was his wife.

**"But there was a lot more money. The will said half of this money should go to Agnes.**

**The other half should go to her child, but only if the child grew up as a person with good morals."**

- a) **Who said this? To whom?**  
- Monks to Mr. Brownlow and the others.
- b) **Who was the child?**  
- He was Oliver.
- c) **Did the child grow up as a person with morals?**  
- Yes as Oliver refused to be a thief.

**"Your father did not want another bad son like you."**

- a) **Who said this? To whom?**  
- Mr. Brownlow to Monks.
- b) **Who was the other son?**  
- He was Oliver.
- c) **What did that father do to have a good son?**  
- He wrote in his will that half of his money should go to Agnes child, but only if the child grew up as a person with good morals.

**"I did not want the boy to be good."**

- a) **Who said this? To whom?**  
- Monks to Mr. Brownlow.
- b) **Who was that boy?**  
- He was Oliver.
- c) **Why did the speaker want that boy to be good?**  
- Because if Oliver was grown up badly, he wouldn't take half of his father's money.

**"I wanted to be sure that he was a thief so that he wouldn't get the money."**

- a) **Who said this? To whom?**  
- Monks to Mr. Brownlow.
- b) **Who was the speaker talking about?**  
- He was talking about Oliver.
- c) **What money was the speaker talking about?**  
- He was talking about the money Oliver's father left him in his will in condition that Oliver was grown up well.

**"When he ran away, I helped the Artful Dodger to find him so he could introduce him to my friend Fagin, and then Fagin helped him to be a thief"**

- a) **Who said this and who is he talking about?**  
- Monks and he was talking about Oliver.
- b) **Why did the speaker want the other person to be a thief?**  
- To make him a bad boy to prevent him from getting his share in his father's money.
- c) **Where did the speaker say this?**  
- At the hotel where Mr. Brownlow gathering them.



**'I bought the locket from some people at the workhouse where Oliver lived.'**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Monks to Mr. Brownlow.

**b- Who were the people the speaker had bought the locket from?**

-They were the Bumbles.

**c- Whose locket was that?**

- It was Oliver's mother (Agnes's) locket.

**'I'm so happy to see you again. You have always been such a good boy!'**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Mr. Bumble to Oliver.

**b- What was the speaker's job at that time?**

-He was the master of the workhouse where Oliver lived.

**c- Where were the speakers?**

- They were in a hotel with Mr. Brownlow and others.

**'Did you sell a locket to this man?'**

**a- Who asked that question? To whom?**

-Mr. Brownlow to Mr. Bumble.

**b- Who was the man who bought the locket?**

-Monks.

**c- What was the other person's reply \ answer?**

- He denied even seeing Monks.

**'Of course not. I have never seen him before.'**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Mr. Bumble to Mr. Brownlow.

**b- What did the speaker deny?**

-He denied selling the locket to Monks.

**c- Was the speaker telling the truth?**

- No, he wasn't.

**'What can you tell us about old Nurse Sally?'**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Mr. Grimwig to the two servants from the workhouse.

**b- Who was Nurse Sally?**

-She was the nurse who knew Oliver's mother's secret.

**c- What did the other person say about Nurse Sally?**

- One of the servants said that he had seen Mrs. Bumble take a gold locket and some papers from Nurse Sally's hands before she died.

**'We saw Mrs Bumble take a gold locket and some papers from Nurse Sally....'**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-A servant from the workhouse to Mr. Brownlow.

**b- Why was that locket important?**

-Because it proved that Oliver was Monks's half brother.

**c- What happened to Nurse Sally?**

-She died.



**"I should not have taken something so important."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Mrs. Bumble to Mr. Brownlow and the others.

**b- What had the speaker taken?**

-She had taken a gold locket and some papers from Nurse Sally before she died.

**c- Why was the thing the speaker taken so important?**

- Because that thing could show who Oliver was.

**"I will tell people never to give you or your husband a good job again,"**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Mr. Brownlow to Mrs. Bumble.

**b- Why did the speaker say that?**

-As a punishment for the Bumbles's dishonesty.

**c- What were the listeners' jobs?**

- Mr. Bumble was the master of the workhouse..

**"There are papers which tell all this, Fagin has them."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Monks to Mr. Brownlow and the others.

**b- What did the papers say \ tell?**

-The papers showed who Rose was. She was Oliver's aunt.

**c- Where did Fagin keep those papers?**

- In a small bag inside the chimney of his front room.

**"I am very happy we are relatives,"**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Oliver to Rose.

**b- How were the speakers relatives?**

-Rose was Oliver's aunt.

**c- Where were the speakers?**

- They were in the hotel.

**"How are you, my boy? I want to talk to you."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Fagin to Oliver.

**b- Where was the speaker?**

- He was in prison.

**c- What did the speaker want the other person to do?**

- He wanted him to get him out of prison.

**"Listen, we know that Monks gave you some papers."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Mr. Brownlow to Fagin.

**b- What were those papers about?**

- Those papers showed who Rose was.

**c- Who was Monks?**

- He was Oliver's half brother.



**"I won't tell you where they are. But I will tell Oliver. Come here, boy."**

**a) Who said this to whom?**

- Fagin to Mr. Brownlow.

**b) What was the speaker talking about?**

- About the papers Monks had given him.

**c) Where were they?**

- They were in a small bag inside the chimney of Fagin's front room.

**"They are in a small bag inside the chimney of my front room."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Fagin to Oliver.

**b- What was the speaker talking about?**

-He was talking about some papers Monks gave him.

**c- Where was the speaker?**

- He was in prison.

**"Now, please get me out of here."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

-Fagin to Oliver.

**b- Where did the speaker want to get out?**

-He wanted to get out of prison.

**c- Why did the speaker want to get out of that place?**

- Because he had been sentenced to death.

**"I can't do that, I have to leave you."**

**a- Who said this to whom?**

- Oliver to Fagin.

**b- What couldn't the speaker do?**

-He couldn't help Fagin to get out of prison.

**c- Where did the speaker leave the other person?**

- He left him in prison.



# Practice Tests

Workbook pages 109- 120

## PRACTICE TEST 4

### A. Language Functions

**1) Finish the following dialogue:**

Samir and Tarik are discussing their summer plans.

Samir :Do you have any plans for the summer?

Tarek :Yes. 1).....

Samir :The Red Sea's beautiful. You and your family will love it. I think it has the best beaches in Egypt.

Tarek :2).....?

Samir :I plan to go to Bournemouth.

Tarek :. 3).....? Where is it?

Samir :Yes, Bournemouth! It's in England.

Tarek :That's interesting! Will you send me a postcard?

Samir :Yes 4).....

**2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

a. A friend says that the book which you are both reading is boring.

.....

b. Your friend says that the bus is the best way to go home from a museum. Disagree.

.....

c. You are asking people questions for a school project You want to know the number of days of holiday they have.

.....

d. A friend starts to tell you about something he/she did last week, but he/she does not finish.

.....

### B. Vocabulary and Structure

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1- The bank is ..... for a job in Cairo in the newspaper.

- a. advertising
- b. applying
- c. asking
- d. recharging

2- Most cameras that you can buy now are .....

- a. device
- b. technology
- c. bright
- d. digital

3- The story was very ....., but I understood it in the end.

- a. bright
- b. naughty
- c. complicated
- d. complete

4- Sales assistants should always be polite to .....

- a. customers
- b. courses
- c. company
- d. comments

5- I'm going to make a ..... that this year will be hotter than last year.

- a. prejudice
- b. prediction
- c. compliment
- d. organization

6- Which ..... do you need to become a flight attendant?

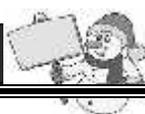
- a. trains
- b. courses
- c. qualifications
- d. relations

7- You always leave your pen in the classroom. You ..... lose it

- a. going to
- b. are going to
- c. is going to
- d. will be

8- I'm tired because I ..... playing tennis.

- a. had just stopped
- b. have just
- c. stopped just
- d. have just stopped



9- Soha was not hungry because she..... lunch.

- a. was already eaten
- b. had already eaten
- c. already eats
- d. ate already

10- The man asked me if he..... help me.

- a. will
- b. can
- c. could
- d. would

11- We agreed ..... the ten o'clock train.

- a. catch
- b. to catch
- c. catching
- d. caught

12- Manal ..... 16 in 2018.

- a. going to be
- b. are going to
- c. is going to
- d. will be

4) Write the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning.

1. Hatem said, "My grandfather taught me how to organize my time." (said that)

.....

2. I always do my homework before I watch TV. (My homework is ..)

.....

3. Charles Dickens is a famous English writer. He was born in 1812. (who)

.....

4. It's impossible that Amal sold her car. (can 't)

.....

5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:

- 1. My friend works as a sells assistant
- 2. Charlotte Bronte was the three of six children.
- 3. However good a law is, it must be forced by a legal system in which the public is confident
- 4. Air and water pollution should be prevented or at last reduced.

**C. Reading Comprehension and set books**

6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:

Omar :Who did you speak to for your school project yesterday!

Tarek :I spoke to a baker and a fireman . I had spoken to a carpenter before them, but he did not have time to answer my questions.

Omar :What did the baker say?

Tarek :He said that he worked six days a week. He said that had to get up at five o'clock every morning to start the ovens!

Omar :What about the fireman?

Tarek :He said that he usually worked five days a week, but last week he worked every day because there was a big fire at the supermarket.

Omar :What are you going to do with the results of your project?

Tarek :I'm going to write an essay. I've already written some of it.

Omar :I'll read it for you if you like.

1. What do you think the school project was about?

.....

2. Who usually works longer, the baker or the fireman?

.....

3. Why does the baker have to get up so early?

.....





**PRACTICE TEST 5**

**A. Language Functions**

**1) Finish the following dialogue:**

**Walid** :When was the Suez Canal opened, Ali?

**Ali** :1).....?

**Walid** :1869? OK, I need to write about two works of engineering from the nineteenth century. I need to think of another one.

**Ali** :2).....?

**Walid** :The London underground! That's a good idea. It was a very difficult project.

**Ali** :Yes, 3).....?

**Walid** : 4).....Thank you.

**2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

a. You want to know if a friend has a fear of spiders.

.....

b. You open your school bag and your English book is not there. It is possible that you left your book at home.

.....

c. A friend shows you a photo and says it shows London in winter. You are sure it is not winter because there are flowers and leaves on the trees.

.....

d. Your friend suggests going to the beach. It is cold and windy. You do not think this is a good idea.

.....

**B. Vocabulary and Structure**

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c, or d:**

1- How much do these oranges .....

- a. cost?                      b. charge?                      c. be?                      d. count?

2- Manal is always very ..... She always tells the truth.

- a. complex.                      b. foreign.                      c. true.                      d. honest.

3- Do you sometimes have an .....with your brothers or sisters?

- a. altitude                      b. engine                      c. argument                      d. expression

4- Run or you will .....the bus to school.

- a. catch                      b. miss                      c. take                      d. get

5- The men at the top of the mountain are in a difficult .....

- a. situation                      b. session                      c. fear                      d. phobia

6- You should .....going down this road because there has been a fire.

- a. enforce                      b. avoid                      c. panic                      d. reach

7- Passengers .....at an altitude of 5,000 metres.

- a. carried                      b. carry                      c. are carry                      d. are carried

8- This book.....100 years ago.

- a. wrote                      b. is written                      c. did write                      d. was written

9- Alexandria, .....is very popular with tourists, is in the north of Egypt.

- a. which                      b. who                      c. where                      d. what



10- It's really dark. There's..... a storm.

- a. will                      b. going to                      c. being                      d. going to be

11- If I..... to bed late, I feel tired all day.

- a. went                      b. will go                      c. go                      d. would go

12- I visited Cairo before I .....Alexandria .

- a. visit                      b. had visited                      c. have visited                      d. visiting

**4 Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning.**

1. You shouldn't neglect your work. (take care)

.....

2. Egypt took over the Suez Canal in 1956. (taken)

.....

3. Smoking is banned in hospitals. (mustn't)

.....

4. After Hala had finished her shopping, she returned home. (Having )

.....

**Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

1. World business was infected by the opening of the Suez Canal.

2. If Fogg succeeds in his challenge, he will beat 20, 000 pounds.

3. Phobias are rational fears.

4. In 1997, Hong Kong was apart of China.

**C. Reading Comprehension and set books**

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

How long does it take to cycle around the world! The answer is 123 days | This is how long it took Andrew Nicholson. The man from New Zealand, who is 43 and a primary school teacher, cycled nearly 30,000 kilometres. His journey took him through America, Europe, India, Asia and Australia. He was given food by many friendly people he met on the way Of course he did not cycle over the sea: he caught boats or planes. He also avoided countries which had problems or wars. However, he is now the fastest person to do this journey on a bike It must have been very tiring. The journey, which was for a charity, is one he will not forget |

**1. What is Andrew Nicholson's job?**

.....

**2. Why do you think some people gave him food?**

.....

**3. Why did he some lmes ravel by boat and plane?**

.....

**4. Why did he not travel through some countries?**

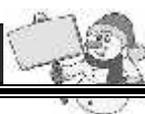
.....

**5. How far did he cycle on hls journey?**

- a. 123,000 km                      b. 30,000 km                      c. 43,000                      d. We do not know.

**6. Which of these countnes can't Andrew Nicholson have cycled through?**

- a. France                      b. Canada                      c. South Africa                      d. Turkey



**7) Answer only FOUR (4) of the following questions:**

1. How do phobias affect people's lives?
2. What is light pollution?
3. Why do you think we face food shortage in many parts of the world?
4. If you were a tourist guide, what role would you play to enhance tourism in your country?
5. Do you agree that pollution is the result of modern life? Why or why not?
6. Do you think that technology will stand still? Why or why not?

**D. The Novel**

**8) Answer the following questions:**

1. Why does Nancy visit Rose Maylie in a hotel?  
.....
2. Who does Rose visit for advice about Oliver?  
.....
3. Why doesn't Mr Brownlow want to tell the police about Fagin 's gang?  
.....
4. Why do you think Mr Brownlow and Dr Losberne want Mr Grimwig and Harry Maylie to help them?  
.....
5. Who agrees to help Fagin to take money from children?  
.....

**"He said that the only thing that could explain who the boy really is lies at the bottom of the river. He said that he had the boy's money and now wanted his brother Oliver put in prison "**

6. Who is he that Nancy is talking about?  
.....
7. What do you think is in the locket that could explain who the boy really is?  
.....
8. Whose money do you think that he has?  
.....

**E. Writing**

**9) Write an e-mail of ninety words to a friend about one (1) of the following:**

- a. work of engineering you like.
- b. an author you like.

Your name is Nabil(a) and your friend's name is Shams.

**F. Translation**

**10) a. Translate into Arabic:**

1. Do you think that communications make the world a small village?  
.....
2. Children are fond of listening to fictional stories for entertainment.  
.....

**b. Translate into English:**

- علينا جميعا ان نشارك في دعم الاقتصاد المصرى.



**PRACTICE TEST 6**

**A. Language Functions**

**1) Finish the following dialogue:**

Amal and Eman are talking about detective stories

Amal :Who wrote the detective story that you are reading?

Eman :a).....

Amal :Arther Conan Doyle? His stories are always very good.

Eman :b)..... I like them, too.

Amal :The story is a mystery.

Eman :c).....?

Amal :It's about a man who disappears from a hotel. I don't really understand what happened.

Eman :d).....? She knows all about his books.

Amal :Ask your sister? Yes, that's a good idea.

**2) Write what you would say in each of the following situations:**

a. You bought a computer but it breaks on the first day. You take it back to the shop where you bought it.  
.....

b. You work in a shop and a customer says that the shirt he bought yesterday has a hole in it.  
.....

c. A student that you do not know very well at school has a book you would like to look at.  
.....

d. Your friend wins a prize in a sports competition.  
.....

**B. Vocabulary and Structure**

**3) Choose the correct answer from a, b, c or d:**

1. The children put the spider in a jar, but it was very fast and soon....

- a. escaped                      b. extinct                      c. enforced                      d. avoided

2. Forests, deserts and mountains are different kinds of.....

- a. climate change              b. habitat                      c. law                              d. phobias

3. Amal's grandmother has a large house which she..... from her uncle.

- a. kidnapped                      b. took part in                      c. inherited                      d. kept off

4. As soon as the burglar went into the bank that night, an alarm.....

- a. went to                              b. went up                              c. went in                              d. went off

5. What is the .....of air pollution?

- a. case                                      b. cause                                      c. hay                                      d. pros

6. They put lights on the castle to.....it at night.

- a. prevent                                      b. bright                                      c. recharge                                      d. illuminate

7. By 2050, the population of Egypt will to nearly 100 million.

- a. grow                                      b. have grown                                      c. be grown                                      d. growing

8. Do you think the character in this story      on a real person?

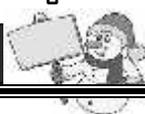
- a. based                                      b. is basing                                      c. has based                                      d. was based

9. ....is usually on the menu of that restaurant.

- a. The chicken                                      b. Chickens                                      c. Chicken                                      d. Some chickens

10. What.....at six o'clock yesterday evening?

- a. you doing                                      b. were you doing                                      c. you did                                      d. did you



11. If Kamal was faster, he.....a good footballer.

- a. be                                      b. will be                                      c. would be                                      d. being

12. He finished.....his lunch and then went into the playground.

- a. eating                                      b. to eat                                      c. eat                                      d. ate

**4) Rewrite the following sentences using the word(s) in brackets, to give the same meaning.**

1. I'm going to visit my uncle in hospital. (decided)

2. Today it is difficult for some animals to survive in such hot weather. (survival)

3. The opening of the Suez Canal has affected world business. (effect)

4. My sister told me that she was doing her homework then. (said)

**5) Find and correct the mistakes in the following sentences:**

1. My father works like a science teacher in a secondary school.
2. We should all respect each others.
3. I'm in trouble and I need your advise badly.
4. Stapleton sank as he was trying to escape.

**C. Reading comprehension and set books**

**6) Read the following passage, then answer the questions:**

We know about most forms of pollution. You can smell the air pollution which comes from our cars and factories and you can see light pollution at night. Dirty rivers are caused by water pollution and alarms and car horns cause noise pollution every day.

However, some forms of pollution are not obvious. Scientists think that many people become ill because of pollution in our homes. When we make our homes warmer or cooler, it often causes pollution which is bad for us. Gas also comes from cookers. Gases from paint and even some furniture can also make us ill. Scientists think that about 99,000 people will have become ill from pollution in their homes next year in Europe. However, scientists are working on ways to avoid such problems in the future.

**1- What causes noise pollution every day?**

**2- Why do many people become ill?**

**3- Why do you think that paint and even furniture can make you ill?**

**4- What will have happened by the end of next year?**

**5- Which of these is not a cause of pollution in the home?**

- a. ovens                                      b. gas fires                                      c. chairs                                      d. water

**6- Why don't many people know about pollution in the home?**

- a. It is not easy to see.                                      b. It is a mystery.  
c. Scientists don't know about it.                                      d. It has never been studied.

**7) Answer only FOUR (4) of the following questions:**

- a. Where did Fogg's journey start and end?
- b. Do you think that phobias are an important problem to solve? Why? Why not?



- c. Why did Dr Mortimer visit Sherlock Holmes and Watson?  
 d. Why do you think Jane needed contact with the other world?  
 e. Do you think that it is necessary to shorten the journey from Europe to Asia? Why or why not?  
 f. Is it a good idea to reclaim desert land for farming? Why or why not?

### D. The Novel

#### 8) Answer the following questions:

1. What does Noah see when he follows Nancy?  
 .....

2. Why do you think Mr Sikes leaves London one morning before it is light?  
 .....

3. Why did Monks throw the locket into the river?  
 .....

4. Why does Mr Brownlow say that Mr and Mrs Bumble will never get a good job again?  
 .....

5. At the end of the story, who has a new father, a good home and an education?  
 .....

" As he grew up , he watched Oliver carefully without him knowing it. When he ran away , I helped the Artful Dodger to find him so he could introduce him to my friend Fagin, and then Fagin helped him to be a thief"

6) Who is talking?  
 .....

7) Why did he want him to be a thief?  
 .....

8) Why do you think he tells Mr Brownlow what he had done?  
 .....

### E. Writing

#### 9) Write a paragraph of ninety words about ONE (1) of the following:

- a. The advantages and disadvantages of being a detective.  
 b. Why some animals find it difficult to survive?

### F. Translation

#### 10) a. Translate into Arabic:

1. To protect our environment , we should stop cutting down trees.  
 .....

2. Everyone should express their opinions freely and respect the opinions of others.  
 .....

#### b. Translate into English:

- سوف يوفر مشروع قناة السويس فرص عمل كثيرة.

Prepared and designed by:  
 Mr. Mahrous Ahmed Haikal  
 Assiut – Sahel Seleem  
 01229603498  
 mahroushahmed@facebook.com

